As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols \triangle (i) or \triangle (i) on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 \triangle or \triangle \triangle is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

Safety Labels P. 97

A Few Words About Safety

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

• Safety Labels - on the vehicle.

 Safety Messages - preceded by a safety alert symbol A and one of three signal words: DANGER, WARNING, or CAUTION. These signal words mean:

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if

you don't follow instructions. You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if

A AWARNING You CAN be KILLED or SERIOU you don't follow instructions.

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** such as Important Safety Precautions.
- Safety Section such as Safe Driving.
- Instructions how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

Event Data Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

Service Diagnostic Recorders

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the illustrations contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

Safe Driving P. 43

For Safe Driving P. 44 Seat Belts P. 49 Airbags P. 61

➔ Instrument Panel P. 99

Indicators P. 100

Gauges and Displays P. 144

Controls P. 179

Clock P. 180 Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 183 Panoramic Roof* P. 216 Adjusting the Seats P. 248 Interior Lights/Interior Convenience Items P. 259

Features P. 285

Audio System P. 286 Audio System Basic Operation P. 293, 319 Customized Features P. 392, 400

Driving P. 485

Before Driving P. 486Towing a Trailer P. 490Off-road Guidelines P. 496Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 616Refueling P. 618

Maintenance P. 621

 Before Performing Maintenance P. 622
 Service Reminder System* P. 626

 Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 660
 Climate Control System Maintenance P. 677

 Climate Control System Maintenance P. 677
 Cleaning P. 680

Handling the Unexpected P. 687

Tools P. 688 Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 709 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 689 Fuses P. 716

Information P. 725

Specifications P. 726

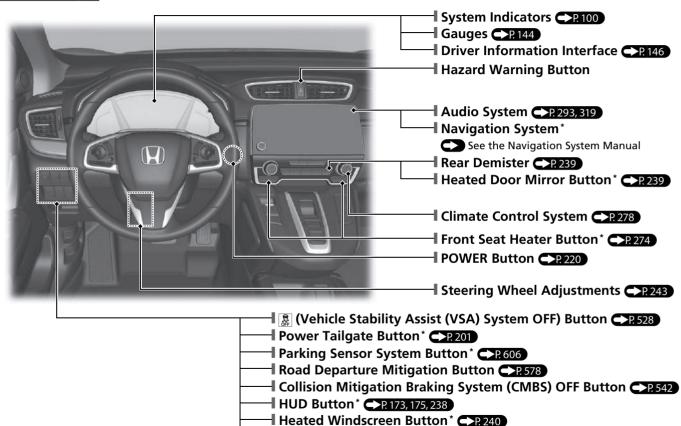
Identification Numbers P. 729

Contents

			h. 7	Quick Reference Guide	P /
Child Safety P. 75	Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 96	Safety Labels P. 97	"h		· · · · ·
			. ''h.		
			۳. ۱	Safe Driving	P. 43
			`		
Opening and Closing the Tailgate B, 106	Security System D. 209	Opening and Closing the Windows P. 214	4. 4	Instrument Panel	<u>P</u> 99
Opening and Closing the Tailgate P. 196 Operating the Switches Around the Steeri Climate Control System P. 278		Opening and Closing the Windows P. 214 Adjusting the Mirrors P. 244	- ⁴ 96.		
Climate Control System P. 278			- Ч	Controls	P_170
			h, i		r. 179
Audio Error Messages P. 385	General Information on the Audio System		-40h		
Hands-Free Telephone System P. 428, 449	9 Emergency Call (eCall)* P. 4	180	The second se	Features	P. 285
			lin.		
When Driving P. 498 Honda Sensir	ng P. 539 Braking P. 595	Parking Your Vehicle P. 604	- ((())) - (())	Driving	D_10E
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions P. 620					P. 480
			him.		
Maintenance Schedule* P. 631	Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 639	Replacing Light Bulbs P. 655		Maintenance	P. 621
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 665	12-Volt Battery P. 670	Remote Transmitter Care P. 676			
Accessories and Modifications P. 685					
				Handling the Unexpected	P. 687
Power System Won't Start P. 701	Jump Starting P. 704	Overheating P. 706			
Emergency Towing P. 722	When You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 7	5		Information	D 705
			- (Information	P. 725
Den in the trait Dentie Marine D. 700	FC D. Lasting of Confermity Constant O	11 AD 254			
Devices that Emit Radio Waves P. 730	EC Declaration of Conformity Content Ou	Jtiine ⁺ P. 754	- 1	Index	P. 758
			- 5		1.750

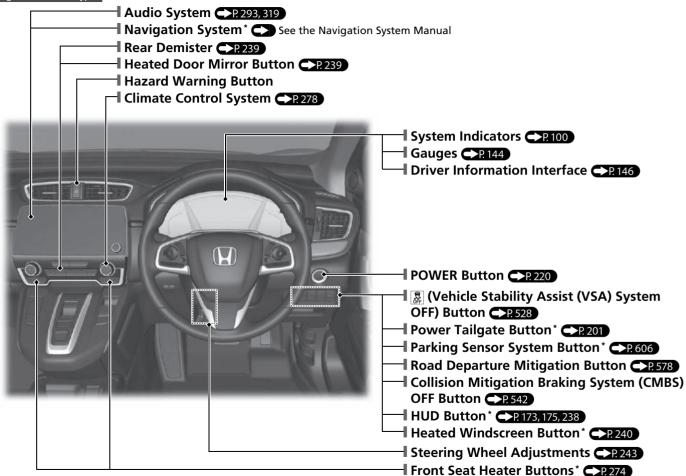
Visual Index

Left-hand Drive Type

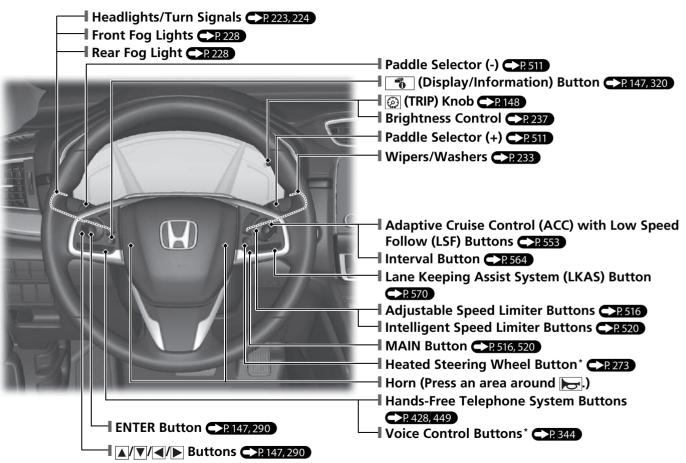


Headlight Washer Button*

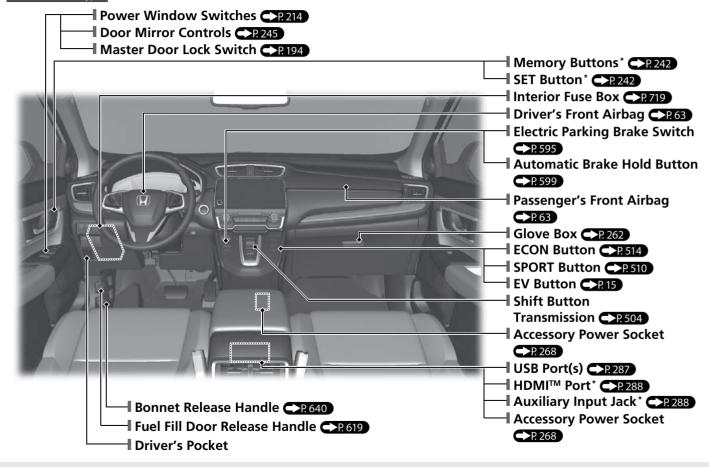
Right-hand Drive Type



Visual Index

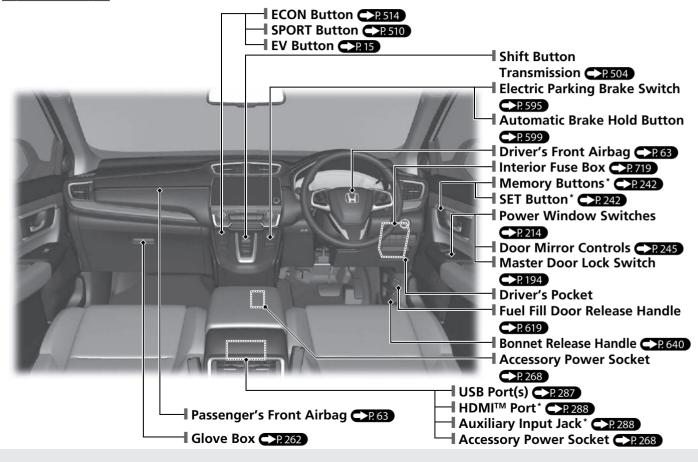


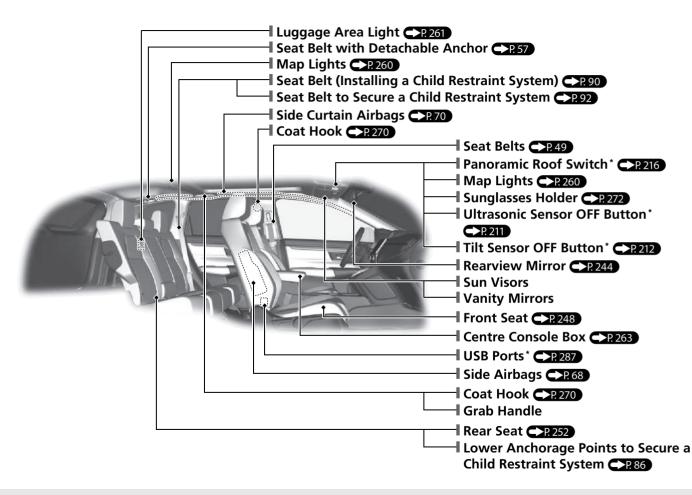
Left-hand Drive Type



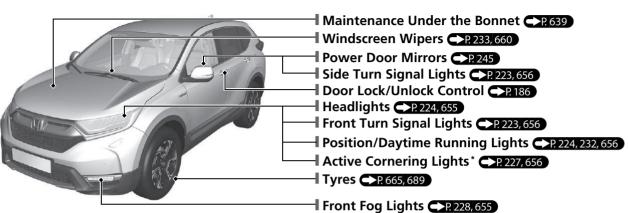
Visual Index

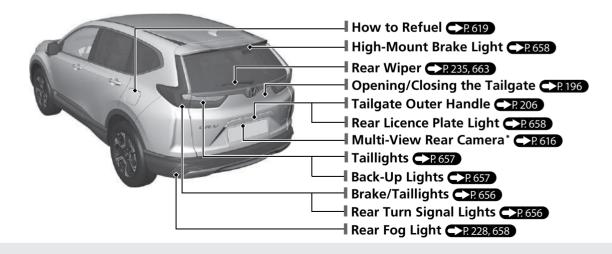
Right-hand Drive Type





Visual Index





SPORT HYBRID i-MMD (intelligent Multi Mode Drive)

Your SPORT HYBRID i-MMD vehicle uses both an electric motor and a petrol engine as propulsion sources, with the electric motor receiving electricity from an internal High Voltage battery or internal generator. The High Voltage battery can be charged from the generator driven by the engine or regenerative braking.

When driving, your vehicle is propelled exclusively by the electric motor, exclusively by the petrol engine, or by a combination of the two. The system selects which propulsion source is most appropriate and automatically switches to it. Under certain circumstances, pressing the **EV** button can manually enable EV (driven only on electricity) mode.

• Energy efficiency

As with a petrol-powered vehicle, hybrid vehicle fuel efficiency and driving range is most impacted by your driving style. Aggressive acceleration and high-speed driving can easily trigger the system to switch the propulsion source to the petrol-powered engine. In addition, heavy climate control system use negatively affects vehicle range and efficiency. Either of these use patterns will more quickly reduce the High Voltage battery's state of charge.

Battery types

There are two types of batteries used in this vehicle; a standard 12-volt battery that powers the airbags, the interior and exterior lights, and other standard 12-volt systems; and a High Voltage battery that is used to power the propulsion motor and recharge the 12-volt battery.

SPORT HYBRID i-MMD SYSTEM MAIN COMPONENTS

Petrol Engine– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels under certain driving conditions, and turns the generator.

Generator– Starts the engine and generates electric power when driven by the petrol engine to supply electricity to power the electric motor and/or to charge the High Voltage battery.

Electric Motor– Provides propulsion to drive the wheels in conjunction with the petrol engine in certain conditions, and provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.

High Voltage Battery– Provides electrical storage and serves as a power source for the electric motor.

Learning about the High Voltage battery's characteristics will help you get the best handling and maximize the range of your electric vehicle.

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Indicator- Displays

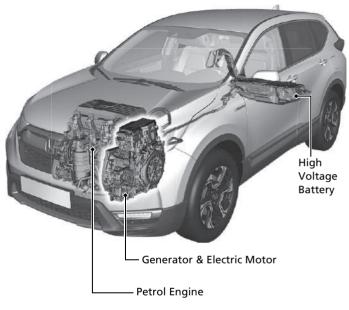
battery state of charge.

When the indicator:

- Displays two or less segments, EV mode is no longer available.
- Displays ten segments, battery charge level is full.

Do not cover the air intake

If the air intake is obstructed during vehicle operation, the High Voltage battery can become too hot. To protect the battery, the system may limit the battery's output and cause the power system and 12-volt battery charging system indicators to come on.





2WD models Vehicle Speed				Time
Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration
Driving state	 Stopped or driven at low speeds: Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels. 	 Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill): The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels. The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging. 	 Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions: The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels. The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion. The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking. 	 The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating. The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking.
Power Flow Monitor				
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging

AWD models Vehicle Speed		Time				
Operating mode	Electric Vehicle (EV)	Hybrid (HV)	Engine (Direct Drive)	Regeneration		
Driving state	 Stopped or driven at low speeds: Only the electric motor provides propulsion to the wheels. 	 Driven in high-load conditions (e.g., when accelerating, going uphill): The Electric Motor provides propulsion to the wheels. The petrol engine drives the generator, supplying electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion or to the High Voltage battery for charging. 	 Driven in high-speed, low-load conditions: The petrol engine provides propulsion to the wheels. The High Voltage battery supplies electricity to the electric motor for added propulsion. The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking. 	 The accelerator pedal is released and the vehicle is decelerating. The electric motor provides electricity to the High Voltage battery through regenerative braking. 		
Power Flow Monitor						
Electric motor	Stopped/Running	Running	Generating/Running	Regenerating		
Generator	Stopped	Generating	No Output	Stopped/No Output		
Engine	Stopped	Running	Running	Stopped/No Output		
High Voltage battery	Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging/Discharge	Charging		

14

EV Button

EV mode is enabled by pressing the **EV** button near the shift button.

The $\ensuremath{\text{EV}}$ mode indicator comes on in the instrument panel when $\ensuremath{\text{EV}}$ mode is enabled.

Press the EV button again to switch back to HV mode.

Some conditions, such as a low High Voltage battery level and a high vehicle speed, may keep the system from manually switching into EV mode. The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface with the button pressed when EV mode is disabled.

Shifts in vehicle, driving or road conditions may automatically cancel EV mode and switch back to HV mode.

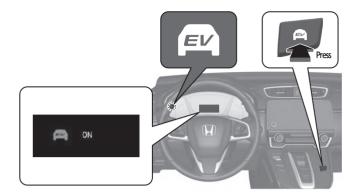
A message will appear on the driver information interface and EV mode may be cancelled automatically when:

- The High Voltage battery charge level is low.
- Your vehicle speed is too high.
- Your vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (25 mph) while the engine is in warming-up operation.
- You fully depress the accelerator pedal.
- You are driving on hilly road.

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 123

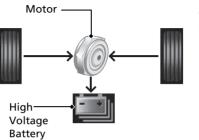
In EV mode, the acoustic vehicle alerting system is on.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System



• Regenerative Energy and Regenerative Braking

When regenerative braking is in operation



When decelerating without the accelerator being depressed or the brake pedal being applied, or while driving downhill, the electric motor acts as a generator that recovers a portion of the electrical energy that was used to accelerate the vehicle. This regenerative braking slows the vehicle in a manner similar to engine braking in a petrol-driven vehicle. You can control the rate of deceleration by using the deceleration paddle selector.

• Auto Engine Stop/Start

Your vehicle's petrol engine automatically stops running during vehicle operation or restarts while the vehicle is stationary when it is appropriate.

In the following cases, however, auto engine stop may not activate.

- The vehicle momentarily needs additional power for aggressive acceleration, or driving uphill or at high speed.
- The climate control system is in heavy use.
- The High Voltage battery temperature is high or low.

• Sounds Unique to the SPORT HYBRID i-MMD System

When you first start driving this vehicle, you will likely hear some unfamiliar sounds, particularly when you turn on the power system, or while you are driving or accelerating from a stop, or when the air is flowing through the High Voltage battery cooling air intake while the High Voltage battery cooling system is activated. Some of these sounds are unique to the powertrain as well as to the fuel, climate control, and High Voltage battery cooling systems; others are similar to sounds generated by conventional automobiles that typically are masked by louder noises absent from a vehicle of this design. These sounds are not a cause for concern, and you will soon recognize them as normal and thus be able to detect any new or unusual noise should one develop.

Safety Precautions



Do not touch the High Voltage system

Attempting to take a High Voltage system component apart or disconnect one of its wires can cause severe electrical shock. Make sure that any maintenance or repairs to the High Voltage system is performed by a Honda dealer.

If a crash occurs

•Be careful of electric shock hazard.

▶If a severe crash damages your vehicle's High Voltage system, there is a possibility of electrical shock due to exposed High Voltage components or wires. If this happens, do not touch any of the High Voltage system components or any of its orange wires.

•Avoid contact with High Voltage battery fluid.

► The High Voltage battery contains a flammable electrolyte that could leak as a result of a severe crash. Avoid skin or eye contact with the electrolyte as it is corrosive. If you accidentally come into contact with the electrolyte, rinse the exposed skin or flush your eyes with copious amounts of water for at least five minutes, and seek medical attention immediately.

•Use a fire extinguisher for an electrical fire.

Attempting to extinguish an electrical fire with a small quantity of water, from a garden hose for instance, can be dangerous.

•Anytime the vehicle is damaged in an accident, have it repaired by a dealer.

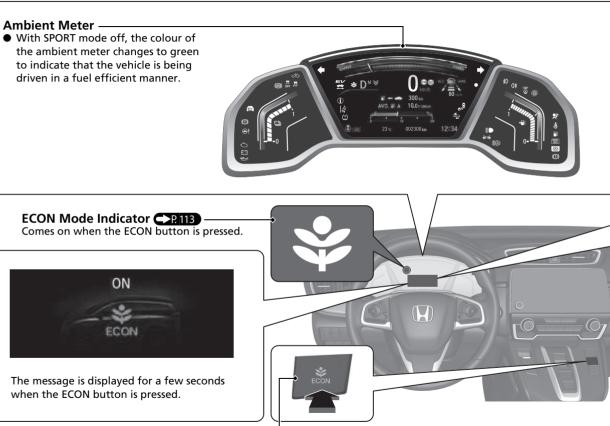
Emergency Shutdown System for the High Voltage System

If the vehicle is involved in a crash, the emergency shutdown system will activate depending on the severity of the impact. When the system activates, the High Voltage system automatically shuts down, and the vehicle can no longer move under its own power. To return the High Voltage system back to normal operation, consult a dealer.

When the vehicle is disposed

•The High Voltage battery is a Lithium ion battery. Honda collects and recycles used High Voltage batteries – consult with your dealer for proper battery disposal in the event your vehicle is not repairable.

Eco Assist System



ECON Button P.514 Helps to maximise fuel economy.

Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

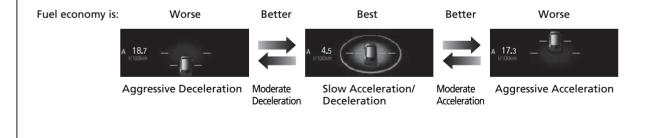
• Comes on when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.



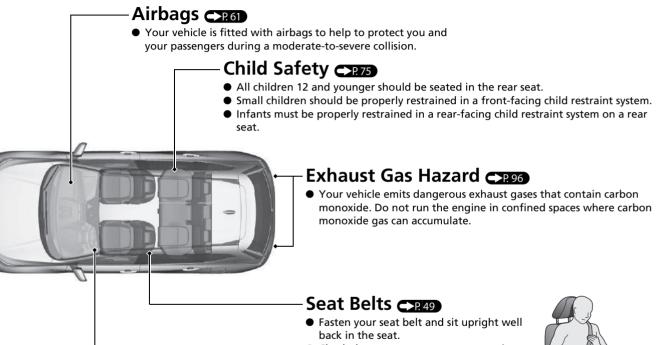
Lifetime Points

Eco Drive Display CR152

• Keep the vehicle icon near the centre of the circle.



Safe Driving CERED



- Before Driving Checklist CTR48
- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.



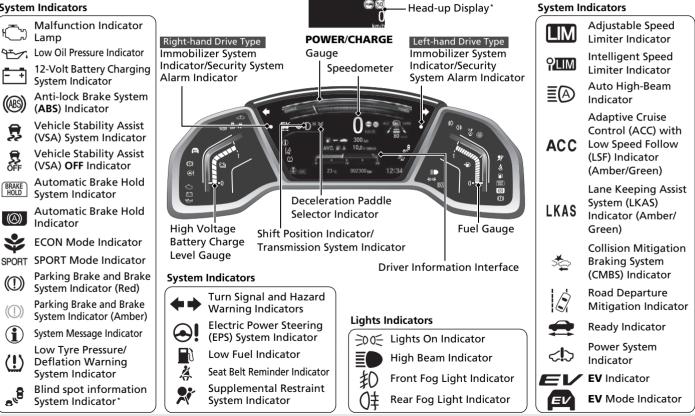
Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

Quick Reference Guide

Instrument Panel

Gauges CR144/Driver Information Interface CR146/Head-up Display* CR173/ System Indicators CARIOO

System Indicators



Controls CERTS

Clock P. 180

Models with navigation system

The audio system receives signals from GPS satellites, updating the clock automatically.

Models with colour audio system



- Press and hold the MENU/CLOCK button.
- 2 Rotate 중 to change hour, then press ਫ਼.
- 3
- Rotate \bigcirc to change minute, then press \bigotimes .



Select SET, then press ప్ర.

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob.

- Rotate 🗇 to select.
- Press ö to enter.

Models with Display Audio



- Select the 🔝 (HOME) icon, then select Settings.
- 2 Select Clock, then Clock Adjustment.
- 3 Touch the respective ▲/▼ icon to adjust the hours or minutes up or down.



stment. OPress the ENTER button.

1

2

Press the ENTER button to select Adjust Clock.

Press the **•** button to select **•**, then press the **ENTER** button.

Press the \blacktriangle / \bigtriangledown button until **Clock**

Setup appears on the display.

00

Models with colour audio system

- Press the ▲/▼ button to change hour, then press the ENTER button.
- 6 Press the ▲/▼ button to change minute, then press the ENTER button.

Quick Reference Guide

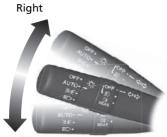
POWER Button

Press the button to change the vehicle's power mode.



Turn Signals

Turn Signal Control Lever



Left



Flashing the high beams

Wipers and Washers

► P. 233

Wiper/Washer Control Lever

— MIST

OFF AUTO^{*1}: Wiper speed varies automatically INT^{*2}: Low speed with intermittent LO: Low speed wipe HI: High speed wipe

> Pull toward you to spray washer fluid.

Adjustment Ring
: Low Sensitivity*1
: J : Lower speed, fewer sweeps*2
: High Sensitivity*1

+ 4: Higher speed, more sweeps^{*2}

*1: Models with automatic intermittent wipers

*2: Models without automatic intermittent wipers

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

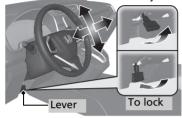
AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Steering Wheel CR243

• To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.

To adjust



Unlocking the Front Doors from the Inside

► P. 193

• Pull either front door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.



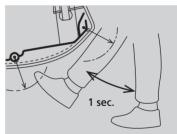
Quick Reference Guide

Tailgate CR196



Models with power tailgate

Use a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.





• Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you have the keyless remote on you.

Models with power tailgate

• Press the power tailgate button on the driver side control panel, or press the remote transmitter.

Power Door Mirrors

►P. 245

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to L or R.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Folding Button



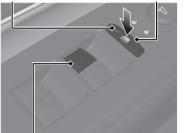
Adjustment Switch —

Selector Switch

Power Windows CR214

- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.

Indicator Power Window Lock Button

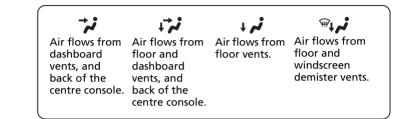


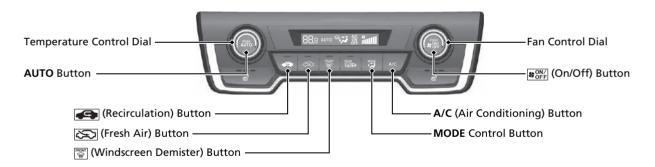
Window Switch

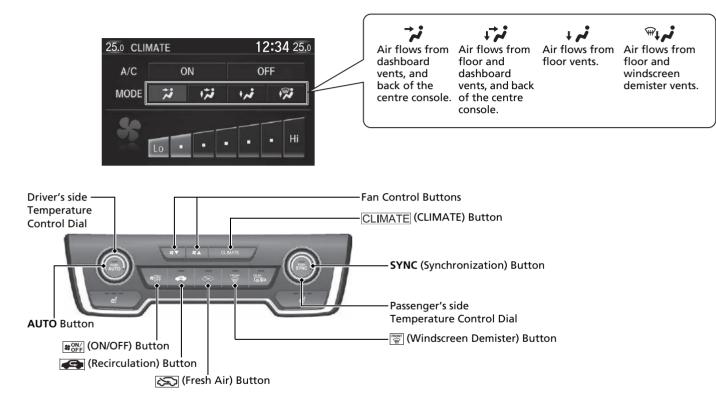
Climate Control System CR278

- Press the AUTO button to activate the climate control system.
- Press the $\overline{\mathbf{s}_{OFF}^{ON/}}$ button to turn the system on or off.
- Press the windscreen.

Models with colour audio system



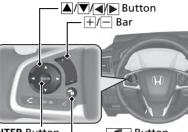




Features CREES

Audio Remote Controls





ENTER Button

🐔 Button

- +/- Bar Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- ▲/▼ Button Press \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

Models with colour audio system FM1/FM2/DAB1/DAB2/IW/MW/USB or iPod/Bluetooth® Audio/AUX

Models with Display Audio

FM/DAB/LW/MW/USB/iPod/ Bluetooth[®] Audio/Apps/Audio Apps/ AUX-HDMI™

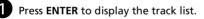
Models with Display Audio

- ENTER Button
- When listening to the radio
 - Press ENTER to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
- Press \blacktriangle or $\overline{\lor}$ to select a preset, then press ENTER.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
- 1 Press ENTER to display the folder list.
- Press \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to select a folder.
- **B** Press ENTER to display a list of tracks in that folder.
- - Press \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to select a track, then press ENTER.

- When listening to an iPod
- Press ENTER to display the iPod music list



- Press ENTER to display a list of items in the category.
- Press \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to select an item, then press ENTER.
- Press ENTER and press A or repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.
- When listening to *Bluetooth*[®] Audio



Press \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to select a track, then press ENTER.

• • Button

Radio: Press to change the preset station. Press and hold to select the next or previous strong station.

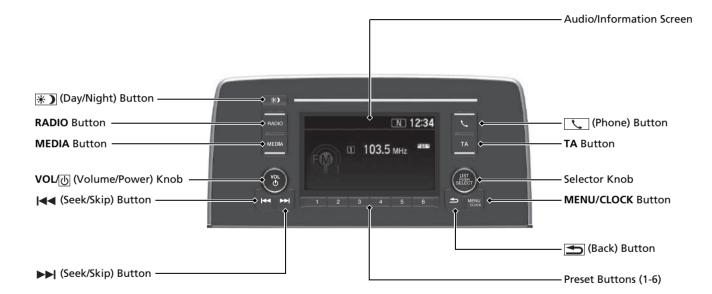
USB device:

Press to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song. Press and hold to change a folder. (Display/Information) Button:

- Press to change contents.
 - Driver Information Interface P. 146

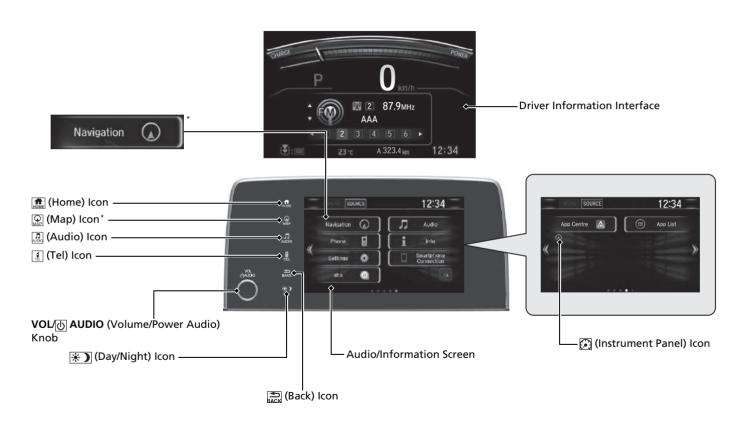
Audio system 28286

Models with colour audio system P.293



Models with Display Audio CP. 319

For navigation system operation See the Navigation System Manual



Driving CI2485

Transmission **PR503**

- Select P and depress the brake pedal when turning on the power.
- Shift selection





Park Press

Press the P button.

Used when parking or before turning off or starting the power system. Transmission is locked.



Reverse

Press back the R button. Used when reversing.



Neutral Press the N button. Transmission is not locked.



Drive

Press the D button. Used for normal driving. The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.

The deceleration paddle selector can be used when SPORT mode is on.

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.

Pull the + selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

When SPORT mode is OFF

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the instrument panel.

When SPORT mode is ON

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the instrument panel.





When SPORT deceleration stage appears.

When SPORT mode is mode is OFF, the ON, the deceleration stage and **M** appear.



- Paddle Selector

+ Paddle Selector

Deceleration stage



Adjustable Speed Limiter

►P.516

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

- To use the adjustable speed limiter, press the **MAIN** button. Select the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **LIM** button, then press the **-/SET** when your vehicle reaches the desired speed.
- The vehicle speed limit can be set from 30 km/h (18 mph) to 250 km/h (156 mph).

VSA On and Off **PR528**

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering, and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the power system.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Deflation Warning System

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The Deflation Warning System is turned on automatically every time you turn on the power system.
- An initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

CMBS On and Off CR546

- When a possible collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the power system.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

Refueling CR618

 Fuel recommendation:
 EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel

 Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane

 number 95 or higher

Fuel tank capacity: 57 L





2 Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.

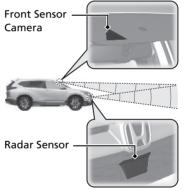
- **3** Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.
- 4 After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



Honda Sensing

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located in the front grille and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

The camera is located behind the rearview mirror.



The radar sensor is in the front grille.

►P 539

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Road Departure Mitigation System 778

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

Traffic Sign Recognition System

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the driver information interface and the headup display*.

Maintenance create

Under the Bonnet CR639

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, inverter coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the 12-volt battery condition monthly.



Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.





Locate the bonnet latch lever, push it to the side, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.



winter driving.

Quick Reference Guide

38

Handling the Unexpected

Flat Tyre P.689

• Park in a safe location and repair the flat tyre using the temporary tyre repair kit.



Indicators Come On

►P. 709

• Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



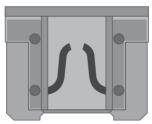
Power System Won't Start C22701

• If the 12-volt battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



Blown Fuse CR716

• Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



Overheating 27.706

 Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the power system cool down.



Emergency Towing (1972)

• Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



What to Do If

Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?



This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal. Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) > P.601



The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?



Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.





Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?



If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.



Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?



The beeper sounds when:

- The exterior lights are left on.
- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.



Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?



The beeper sounds when the driver and/or any passengers are not wearing their seat belts.



Pressing the electric parking brake switch does not release the parking brake. Why?



Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed.



Depressing the accelerator pedal does not release the parking brake automatically. Why?



- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Check if the transmission is in P or N. If so, select any other position.



Why does the shift position automatically change to P when I open the driver's door to check for parking space lines when reversing?



- Fasten the driver's seat belt.
- Close the driver's door and manually change the shift position.

Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?



The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.



I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?



The Deflation Warning System needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to reinitialise the system. ▶ Deflation Warning System ► 2853



Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 91 or higher on this vehicle?



Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher may be used temporarily. The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions	44
Important Handling Information	46
Your Vehicle's Safety Features	47
Safety Checklist	48

Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts	49
Fastening a Seat Belt	55
Seat Belt Inspection	59
Anchorage Points	60
A 1	

Airbags

Airbag System Components61

Types of Airbags	63
Front Airbags (SRS)	63
Side Airbags	68
Side Curtain Airbags	70
Airbag System Indicators	72
Airbag Care	74
Child Safety	
Protecting Child Passengers	75
Safety of Infants and Small Children	78
Safety of Larger Children	93

Exhaust Gas Hazard

Safety Labels

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

Important Safety Precautions

Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

➢For Safe Driving

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

Control your speed

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

Keep your vehicle in safe condition

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

Important Handling Information

Your vehicle has higher ground clearance than a passenger vehicle designed for use only on pavement. Higher ground clearance has many advantages for off-road driving. It allows you to travel over bumps, obstacles, and rough terrain. It also provides good visibility so you can anticipate problems earlier.

These advantages come at some cost. Because your vehicle is taller and rides higher off the ground, it has a higher centre gravity making it more susceptible to tipping or roll over if you make abrupt turns. Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt. As a reminder, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts. ➢Important Handling Information

For information on how to reduce the risk of rollover, read:

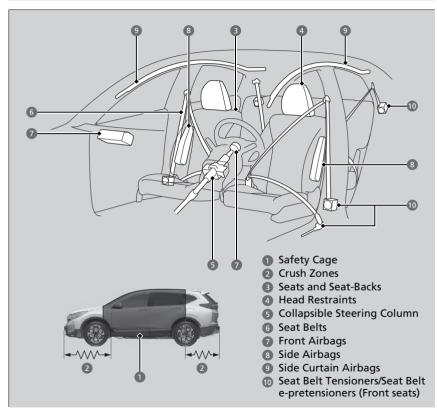
Precautions While Driving P. 501
 Off-road Guidelines P. 496

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

In many countries, the law prohibits off-road driving, e. g. driving in forests, trailblazing, etc. Please check your local laws and regulations before commencing any off-road driving activity.

Safe Driving

Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

➢Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

Safety Checklist

For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

• Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.

Adjusting the Seats P. 248

• Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints P. 254

• Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.

Fastening a Seat Belt P. 55

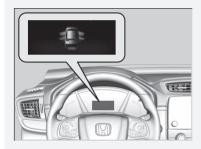
• Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.

Child Safety P. 75

Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 123



About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

About Your Seat Belts

Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.

Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.

WARNING: Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

WARNING: Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

WARNING: Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

WARNING: Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

Lap/shoulder seat belts

All five seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt P. 90

Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

➢About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

Seat Belt Reminder



Front seats

The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

≫Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

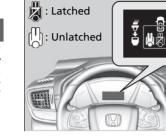
If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor. Check if:

- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



Rear seats

USI

Your vehicle monitors rear seat belt use. The driver information interface notifies you if any of the rear seat belts are used.

The display appears when:

- A rear door is opened or closed.
- Any of the rear passengers latches or unlatches their seat belt. The beeper sounds if any rear passenger's seat belt is unlatched while driving.

To see the display:

Press the 6 (display/information) button.

Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front and the outer rear seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts and the outer rear seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



Mutomatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

Seat Belt e-pretensioners



Are the motor-powered pretensioners that start to retract the front seat belts when the CMBS, brake assist system, or VSA system is in operation. They may also activate when you steer the vehicle hard, or the vehicle is impacted. After retracted, the seat belts are slackened to their original positions. As convenient features, the e-pretensioners slightly retract the seat belts when you latch the seat belt buckle, depress the brake pedal more aggressively than you normally do, or make a sharp turn, and fully retract when you release the seat belt buckle.

Seat Belt e-pretensioners

If only the e-pretensioners were activated, no components need to be replaced.

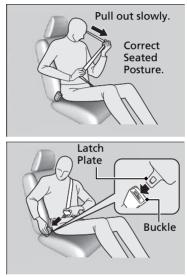
The e-pretensioners may not work if:

- Supplemental Restraint System Indicator is on.
- Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator is on.

Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

Adjusting the Seats P. 248



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.

Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.

- **2.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.
 - Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

When you or the front passenger insert the latch plate into the buckle, the front seat belt retracts automatically.

Seat Belt e-pretensioners P. 54



- **3.** Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
- **4.** If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

➢Fastening a Seat Belt

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

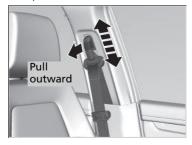
➢Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

The shoulder anchor height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchor position is secure.

Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor

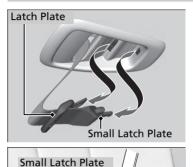
The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchors to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



- **1.** Move the anchor up and down while pulling the shoulder anchor outward.
- **2.** Position the anchor so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

Latch Plate Buckle



Anchor Buckle

1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchor buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchor buckle.

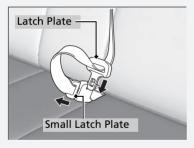
3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchor unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchor is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchor, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.





Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt and keep the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



across the hips.

➢Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
 - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

Seat Belt Inspection

Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.

Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.

WARNING: No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

WARNING: It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

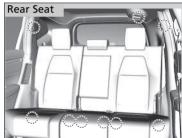
WARNING: Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

Anchorage Points



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.

The rear seats has three lap/shoulder belts.



60

Airbag System Components

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for a front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seatbacks. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.

- An electronic control unit that, when the vehicle is on, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch, passenger front airbag off indicator and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic seat belt tensioners for the front seats and outer rear seats.
- The front seat belt tensioners also include the e-pretensioners.

- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- An indicator on the dashboard that alerts you that the front passenger's front airbag has been turned off.

Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

What you should do: Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers. Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

➢Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- Front airbags: Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- Side airbags: Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- Side curtain airbags: Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest.

The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

When front airbags should not deploy

Minor frontal crashes: Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

Side impacts: Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

Rear impacts: Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

Rollovers: Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

Passenger Front Airbag Off System

If it is unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, you must manually deactivate the passenger front airbag system, using the key.

Passenger front airbag ON/OFF switch



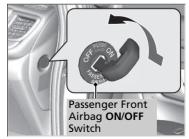
When the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch is in:

OFF: The passenger front airbag is deactivated. The passenger front airbag does not inflate during a frontal crash that inflates driver's front airbag.

The passenger front airbag off indicator stays on as a reminder.

ON: The passenger front airbag is activated. The passenger front airbag on indicator comes on and remains on for about 60 seconds.

To deactivate the passenger front airbag system



- **1.** Set the parking brake, and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- **2.** Open the front passenger's door.
- **3.** Insert the key to the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch.
 - The switch is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.
- **4.** Turn the key to **OFF**, and remove it from the switch.

≥Passenger Front Airbag Off System

The passenger front airbag system must be turned off, if it is not avoidable to put a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

If the front passenger airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with enough force to kill or cause a very serious injury to the infant.

Make sure to turn on the passenger front airbag system when a rear-facing child restraint system is not used on the front passenger seat.

Leaving the passenger front airbag system deactivated can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

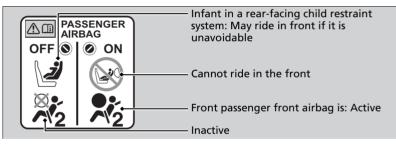
Passenger front airbag off indicator

When the passenger front airbag system is activated, the indicator goes off after a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON.

When the passenger front airbag system is deactivated, the indicator stays on, or goes off momentarily and comes back on.

Passenger front airbag off system label

The label is located at the side panel of the front passenger side instrument panel.



≥Passenger Front Airbag Off System

NOTICE

- Use your vehicle's key to turn the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. If you use a different key, the switch can be damaged, or the passenger front airbag system may not work properly.
- Do not close the door or apply an excessive load on the key while the key is in the passenger front airbag **ON/OFF** switch. The switch or the key can be damaged.

We strongly recommend that you do not install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat.

Protecting Infants P. 78

It is your responsibility to change the setting of the passenger front airbag system to **OFF** when you put a rear-facing child restraint system on the front passenger seat.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, turn the system back on.

Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

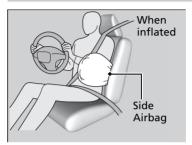
Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-tosevere side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

Side Airbags

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer.

Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

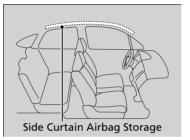
When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and any passengers during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

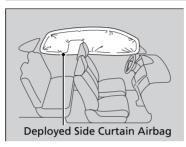
Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

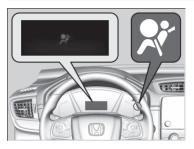
When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



■ When the power mode is set to ON The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

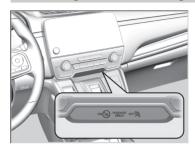
Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

Remove the rear-facing child restraint system immediately from the front passenger seat if the SRS indicator comes on. Even if the passenger front airbag has been deactivated, do not ignore the SRS indicator.

The SRS system may have a fault which could cause the passenger front airbag to be activated, causing serious injury or death.

Passenger Front Airbag Off Indicator



When the passenger front airbag off indicator comes on

The indicator stays on while the passenger's front airbag system is deactivated.

When a rear-facing child restraint system is not in use in the front passenger seat, manually turn the system back on. The indicator should go off.

Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

➢Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

Protecting Child Passengers

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm (60 inches) be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

European models

Child restraint systems must meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

Selecting a Child Restraint System P. 81 Except European models

We recommend that child restraint systems meet UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries.

Selecting a Child Restraint System P. 81

Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat. This is because:



- An inflating front or side airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

➢Protecting Child Passengers

Front Passenger's Sun Visor



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.
- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

➢Protecting Child Passengers

WARNING: Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

Opening/Closing the Power Windows P. 214

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning label on the passenger's side sun visor.

Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

Safety Labels P. 97

Safety of Infants and Small Children

Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing, reclining child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat, and the infant is at least one year old.

Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

If this occurs, we recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.

Or, you may wish to get a smaller rearfacing child restraint system.

Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

➢Protecting Infants

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:



NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rearfacing child restraint system. When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

➢Protecting Infants

Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

If it is absolutely unavoidable to install a rear-facing child restraint system in the front passenger seat, manually turn off the passenger front airbag system. Passenger Front Airbag Off System P. 66

Protecting Smaller Children

If a child is at least one year old and has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a frontfacing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

➢Protecting Smaller Children

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigidtype connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximizing your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISO FIX restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44 or No. 129, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system is simple.

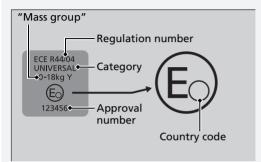
Lower anchorage-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

Child Restraint Systems Standards

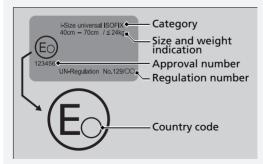
If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size/ISOFIX type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

Selecting a Child Restraint System

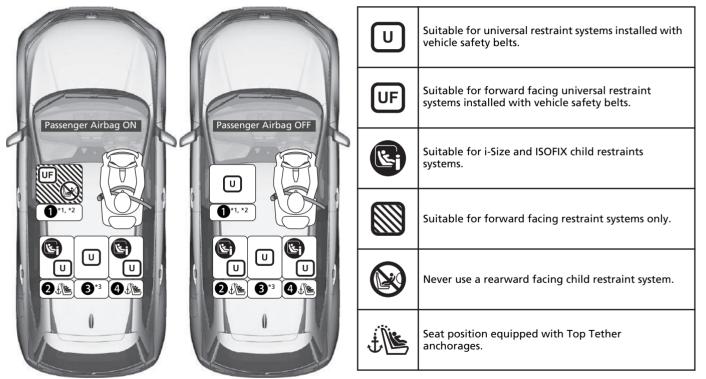
Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label



Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label



Locations for Child Restraint System Installation



- *1: When installing a child seat, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position and adjust the seat back angle to the most upright position.
- *2: If you can not fix the child restraint system stably, adjust the seat back angle to be parallel with the back side of the child restraint system, still keeping it forward of the seat belt shoulder anchor.
- *3: If you attach a child seat, you can not attach the seat belt of the left side seat.

	Seating position				
	0		2	B	4
	Front pa	Front passenger		2nd row	
Seat position number	Passenger Airbag ON/OFF switch		Left	Centre	Right
	ON	OFF			
Seating position suitable for universal belted (yes/no)	yes ^{*1} Forward facing only	yes*1	yes	yes	yes
i-Size seating position (yes/no)	no	no	yes	no	yes
Seating position suitable for recommended child seat (yes/ no)	yes	yes	yes	yes	yes
Seating position suitable for lateral fixture (L1/L2)	no	no	no	no	no
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1/R2X/R2/R3)	no	no	R3	no	R3
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F1/F2X/F2/F3)	no	no	F3	no	F3
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2/B3)	B3	B3	B3	no	B3

*1: When installing a child seat, adjust the seat slide to the most rear position and adjust the seat back angle to the most upright position.

The child seat with the support legs can also be attached for non i-size seating position.

≥ Locations for Child Restraint System Installation

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

Fixture (CRF)	Description
ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
ISO/R2X	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems
ISO/B2	Reduced width forward-facing booster seat
ISO/B3	Full width forward-facing booster seat

Europe Genuine CRS List

R44

Mass Group	Child Restraint System	Category
Group 0 up to 10kg	_	
Group 0+ up to 13 kg		_
Group I 9 to 18kg	_	
Group II, III 15 to 36 kg	Honda KIDFIX XP SICT	Universal Semi-universal

R129

Range of application	Child Restraint System	Category
40 to 83cm	Honda baby safe	Infant carrier module
up to 13kg (Birth - 15 months)	Honda baby safe ISOFIX	Base for i-Size
76 to 105cm 8 to 22kg (15 months - 4 years)	Honda ISOFIX	i-Size Universal ISOFIX

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer rear seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.

- Mark

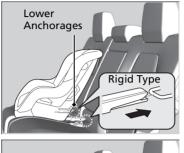
1. Locate the lower anchorages beside the marks.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

Never attach two child restraint system to the same anchor. In a collision, one anchor may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.







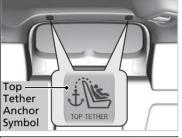
- **2.** Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.
 - When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

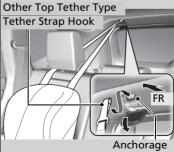
The flexible type may not be available in your country.



Straight Top Tether Type Tether Strap Hook

1

Anchorage



3. Open the tether anchorage cover.

Child restraint system with tether strap

- **4.** Pull up the head restraint, and push it behind until it latches, then route the tether strap outside/through the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
- **5.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
- **6.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- **7.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

Installing a Lower Anchorage-Compatible Child Restraint System

WARNING: Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether anchor symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

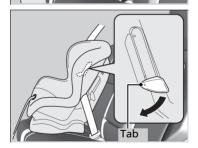


Child restraint system with support leg

- **4.** Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
 - Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support.
 - Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt





- **1.** Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
- **2.** Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.

► Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.

- **3.** Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
- **4.** Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
 - When doing this, place your weight on child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
- **5.** Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
 - When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.



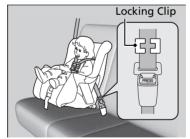
- **6.** Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
- **7.** Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.

Except European models

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

- **3.** Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
- **4.** Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
- **5.** Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.



Adding Security with a Tether



Two tether anchorage points are provided in the ceiling for the outer rear seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

- Straight Top Tether Type Tether Strap Hook Anchorage Other Top Tether Type **Tether Strap** Hook Anchorage
- 1. Pull up the head restraint and push rearward until it latches, then route the tether strap outside/through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
- **2.** Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
- **3.** Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

➢Adding Security with a Tether

WARNING: Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for forward facing child restraint system when using the seat belt or lower anchors.

Safety of Larger Children

Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

Safety of Larger Children Safety of Larger Children

Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.

A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

- 1. Select the fresh air mode.
- 2. Select the 👬 mode.
- **3.** Set the fan speed to high.
- 4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

➢Carbon Monoxide Gas

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

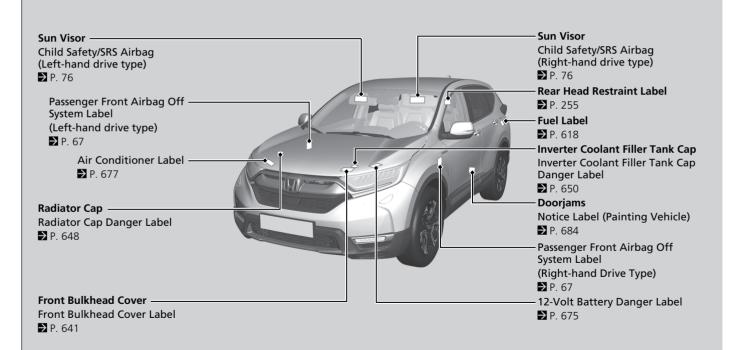
An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas.

Do not turn the power system on with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after turning the power system on.

Label Locations

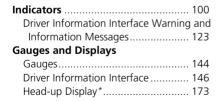
These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off if the parking brake has been released. Comes on when the parking brake is applied and goes off when it is released. Comes on when the brake fluid level is low. Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system. The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released. 	 Comes on while driving - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level. What to do when the indicator comes on while driving P. 711 Comes on along with the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) - Immediately stop in a safe place. Contact a dealer for repair. The brake pedal becomes harder to operate. Depress the pedal further than you normally do. Comes on along with the ABS indicator - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks P. 711 	© © ®

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
(Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	 Comes on for about 15 seconds when you pull the electric parking brake switch while the power mode is in OFF. Stays on for about 15 seconds when you set the power mode to OFF, while the electric parking brake is set. 	 Blinks and the parking brake and brake system indicator (amber) comes on at the same time - There is a problem with the electric parking brake system. The parking brake may not be set. Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On P. 712 	_
BRAKE HOLD	Automatic Brake Hold System Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when the automatic brake hold system is on. 	Automatic Brake Hold P. 599	NUT SET
	Automatic Brake Hold Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when the automatic brake hold is activated. 	Automatic Brake Hold P. 599	_

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
(Amber)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Amber)	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system. Comes on if there is a problem with the electric parking brake system or the automatic brake hold system. Comes on if there is a problem with the cooperative control with regenerative braking, the electric servo brake system, or the hill start assist system. 	 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Comes on while driving - Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately. 	
		 Comes on if there is a problem with the radar sensor. Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. 	 Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. Load Limit P. 489 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	_

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
< ! >	Power System Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the electric vehicle system. 	• Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	¢
	Ready Indicator	• Comes on when the vehicle is ready to drive.	Turning on the Power P. 498	
EV	EV Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when the vehicle is moved by the motor, and the engine is not operating. 	—	—
EV	EV Mode Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when the vehicle is in EV mode. 	SPORT HYBRID i-MMD (intelligent Multi Mode Drive) P. 11	CON (N

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
9 <u>7-</u> 7.	Low Oil Pressure Indicator	 Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the power system starts. Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low. 	 Comes on while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place. If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On P. 709 	***
۴Ţ	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	 Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off either when the power system is on, or after several seconds if the power system did not turn on. Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems. Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected. 	 Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Shows the self-testing condition of the diagnostics of the emission control system. Blinks while driving - Stop in a safe place where there are no flammable objects. Stop the power system for 10 minutes or more, and wait for it to cool down. Then, take the vehicle to a dealer. If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks P. 710 	Ċ
Ēŧ	12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator	 Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the power system is on. Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not charging. 	 Comes on while driving - Turn off the climate control system and rear demister in order to reduce electricity consumption. If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 709 	2

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
D	Shift Position Indicator	• Indicates the current shift position.	Shifting P. 504	—
ED1	Transmission	• The indicated current shift position blinks if there is a problem with the transmission system.	 Avoid sudden start and acceleration, and stop in a safe place immediately. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	0
N	System Indicator	 The indicated current shift position or all the shift positions blink if you cannot select P due to the transmission system failure. 	Set the parking brake when parking.Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.	(P)-(D)
>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>>	Deceleration Paddle Selector Indicator	 Comes on when the paddle selector is pulled. Blinks when the effective of deceleration does not change while pulling the paddle selector. Comes on with M when SPORT mode is selected and pulling the paddle selector. 	Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 511	_
SPORT	SPORT Mode Indicator	 Comes on when you press the SPORT button. The ambient meter remains lit up in red as long as sport mode is on. 	SPORT Mode P. 510	ON

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
Å	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	 Comes on if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON. If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later. Blinks while driving if either you or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals. 	 The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts. Stays on after you or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Seat Belt Reminder P. 51 	NÞ+D (Red)
[]	Low Fuel Indicator	 Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 8.0 litres/1.76 lmp gal left). Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge. 	 Comes on - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible. Blinks - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	₽ ₽!
(ABS))	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. If it comes on at any other time, there is a problem with the ABS. 	 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function. Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 601 	6

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
*	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected: Supplemental restraint system Side airbag system Side curtain airbag system Seat belt tensioner 	 Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	*
ON () OFF Ži2	Passenger Front Airbag On/Off Indicators	 Both indicators come on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off after a system check up. When the passenger front airbag is active: The on indicator comes back on and remains on for about 60 seconds. When the passenger front airbag is inactive: The off indicator comes back on and stays on. This is a reminder that the passenger front airbag is deactivated. 	Passenger Front Airbag Off System P. 66	_

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Blinks when VSA is active. Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system or brake assist system. 	 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System P. 527 Hill start assist system P. 500 	ţ,
		• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	R
R	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when you partially disable VSA. 	VSA On and Off P. 528	a off
ÕFF	Indicator	• Comes on if the VSA system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	2 ²
@!	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	 Comes on when you set the power mode to ON, and goes off when the power system is on. Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System. 	 Stays on constantly or does not come on at all - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On P. 713 	€!

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
(!)	Low Tyre Pressure/ Deflation Warning System Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialisation process is not yet complete. Comes on and stays on when: One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low. The system has not been initialised. 	 Comes on while driving - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary. Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures - The system needs to be initialised. Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 531 	U L
		• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system.	• Blinks and remains on - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	
		• Comes on if the deflation warning system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	₽8

Continued 109

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
Ì	System Message Indicator	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time. 	 While the indicator is on, press the (display/information) button to see the message again. Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message. The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the button is pressed. 	_
ĒA	Auto High-Beam Indicator	• Comes on when all the operating conditions of the auto high-beam are met.	Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System) P. 229	-

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
+	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever.Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.	 Does not blink or blinks rapidly Replacing Light Bulbs P. 656 	_
Indicators	 Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving. 	Emergency Stop Signal P. 603		
	High Beam Indicator	• Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.	—	—
≓0 0∈	Lights On Indicator	• Comes on whenever the light switch is on, or in AUTO when the exterior lights are on.	• If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF while the exterior lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.	—
钓	Front Fog Light Indicator	• Comes on when the front fog lights are on.	—	—
()ŧ	Rear Fog Light Indicator	• Comes on when the rear fog light is on.	_	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
Indicator	Immobilizer System Indicator	• Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognize the key information.	 Blinks - You cannot start the power system. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again. Right-hand drive type Strongly depress and hold the brake pedal before setting the power mode to ON. All models Repeatedly blinks - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur. 	;÷1+© © -{ ∐
Indicator	Security System Alarm Indicator	 Blinks when the security system alarm has been set. 	Security System Alarm P. 209	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
*	ECON Mode Indicator	Comes on when ECON mode is on.	ECON Mode P. 514	ON ECON
LIM	Adjustable Speed Limiter Indicator	• Comes on when you press the MAIN button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the LIM button.	Adjustable Speed Limiter P. 516	—
LIM 80 km/h Indicator	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Adjustable Speed Limiter Set Speed Indicator	 Comes on when you have set a speed for adaptive cruise control. Comes on when you have set a speed for adjustable speed limiter. 	 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553 Adjustable Speed Limiter P. 516 	_
ŶĽM	Intelligent Speed Limiter Indicator	• Comes on when you press the MAIN button. If a different indicator comes on, subsequently press the LIM button.	Intelligent Speed Limiter P. 520	—
PLIM 80 km/h Indicator	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Intelligent Speed Limiter Set Speed Indicator	 Comes on when the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. Comes on when you have set a speed for intelligent speed limiter. 	 Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553 Intelligent Speed Limiter P. 520 	_

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
		 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the road departure mitigation system. 	• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	I\$
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator	• Comes on if the road departure mitigation system is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	tery off. If it does not, have your vehicle	8
		 Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. 	 Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. Load Limit P. 489 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	-

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator	• Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off.	 Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel. The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the radar sensor. Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 542 	
			 Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. Front Sensor Camera P. 592 	10

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator	• Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off.	 Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera. Front Sensor Camera P. 592 	•

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Adaptive Cruise	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with ACC with LSF. 	 Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	acc.
ACC	Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator	• Comes on if the ACC with LSF is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then re-connected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	₹ ⁸
	(Amber)	 Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. 	 Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. Load Limit P. 489 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	_
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) Indicator (Green)	 Comes on when you press the MAIN button. 	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553	_

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS. 	• Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	LKAS
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)	 Comes on when you press the MAIN button. 	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 570	-

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
, ₩	Collision Mitigation	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds. Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS. 	 Stays on constantly without the CMBS off - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 542 	torf torf
	Braking System (CMBS) Indicator	• Comes on if the CMBS is deactivated temporarily after the 12-volt battery has been disconnected, then reconnected.	• Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	2 ²
		 Indicator may come on temporarily when the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded. 	 Make sure the total load is within the Maximum Load Limit. Load Limit P. 489 Stays on constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. 	_

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
¥¢ ↓	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	• Comes on when the CMBS system shuts itself off.	 Stays on - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Front Sensor Camera P. 592 Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the camera. Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 542 	(D)
			 Stays on - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down. Front Sensor Camera P. 592 	OF

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
* ~~	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator	• Comes on when the CMBS system shuts itself off.	 Indicator may come on temporarily when passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel. The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you cleaned the radar sensor. Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 542 	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Blind spot information System Indicator*	 Comes on for a few seconds when you set the power mode to ON, then goes off. Stays on while the blind spot information system is turned off. 	—	off OFF
		• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor.	 Comes on while driving - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of sensor. Blind spot information System* P. 534 	B
		• Comes on if there is a problem with the system.	• Comes on while driving - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.	. ⁸ i

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the (display/information) button to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the vehicle is no longer able to run due to a malfunction.	• Immediately stop in a safe place.
(Amber)	• Appears when there is a risk that the vehicle will move unexpectedly after you have stopped due to a malfunction with the vehicle.	 While the vehicle is stopped, apply the parking brake. ▶ Parking Brake P. 595 Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
4	 Appears if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed. Appears if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.	• Goes off when all doors and the tailgate are closed.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	 Models with parking sensor system Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system. If there is a problem with any of the sensors, the all sensor indicator(s) comes on in red. 	• Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on or the beeper does not stop even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.
•	• Appears if there is a problem with the acoustic vehicle alerting system.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.
	• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the 12-volt battery.	 Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Checking the 12-Volt Battery P. 670
ļ	• Appears along with the 12-volt battery charging system indicator when the 12-volt battery is not charging.	 Turn off the climate control system and rear demister to reduce electricity consumption. If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On P. 709

*1:Driver information interface *2:Audio/Information screen

Message	Condition	Explanation
<i>1</i> #\	• Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the power mode is in ON.	• There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.
Ъ́	• Appears when the engine oil level is low while the engine is running.	 Appears while driving - Immediately stop in a safe place. If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears P. 715
Þ.	• Appears when the engine is running, there is a system problem in the engine oil level sensor.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
iD مەرە	• Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.	• Appears while driving - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
≣D	 Appears when there is a problem with the headlights. 	• Appears while driving - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.
\$\0 3 #	• Appears if there is a problem a problem with the e- pretensioner system.	• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Message	Condition	Explanation
~ [<u>C</u>]	• Appears if there is a problem with the shutter grill, and the radiator coolant temperature is too high.	• Power output will be reduced, so you may not be able to accelerate or maintain your current speed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
یلہ (White)	• Appears when the engine coolant temperature is near its upper limit.	• Drive slowly to prevent overheating.
(Red)	• Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.	Dverheating P. 706
æ	• Appears if there is a problem with the radiator system.	• Drive slowly to prevent overheating and have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.
N⊅+D (White)	• Appears when you set the power mode to ON, without fastening the driver's seat belt.	• Fasten the seat belt properly before you start to drive.
N	 Models with colour audio system Appears while you are customizing the settings and change the shift position from P to another position. 	Dustomized Features P. 161

Message	Condition	Explanation
ŶD	• Appears if the automatic brake hold is automatically cancelled while it is in operation.	Immediately depress the brake pedal.
TTAN OFF	• Appears when the automatic brake hold system is turned off.	Automatic Brake Hold P. 599
ND-13+1000	• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without wearing the driver's seat belt.	 Fasten the driver's seat belt. Automatic Brake Hold P. 599
* 0+****	• Appears when the automatic brake hold button is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the automatic brake hold is in operation.	 Press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed. Automatic Brake Hold P. 599
©	 Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while it is in operation. 	 Automatic Brake Hold P. 599 Parking Brake P. 595
\$¶+@	• Appears when the electric parking brake switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while the electric parking brake is in operation.	 Appears while driving - Press the electric parking brake switch with the brake pedal depressed. ▶ Parking Brake P. 595

Message	Condition	Explanation
(White) (Amber)	 Appears if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. 	Driver Attention Monitor P. 155
	• Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched, or either rear door is opened and closed.	Seat Belt Reminder P. 51
Þ 30 ma	• Appears when the vehicle speed reaches the set speed. You can set two different speeds for the alarm.	Speed Alarm P. 159

Message	Condition	Explanation	
چە بە م _ا ر	• Appears when any of the service items is required in less than 30 days.	 The remaining days will be counted down per day. Service Reminder System* P. 626 	
÷	• Appears when any of the service items is required in less than 10 days.	 Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible. Service Reminder System* P. 626 	
o ^{rda} -12 <i>¥</i> ≉	• Appears when the indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.	 Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder. Service Reminder System* P. 626 	

Models with service reminder system

Models with headlight washer

Message	Condition	Explanation
ð	• Appears when washer fluid gets low.	 Refill washer fluid. Refilling Window Washer Fluid P. 653

Message	Condition	Explanation
નંશ	• Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.	• Appears constantly - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
Cái	• Appears when you close the door with the power mode on without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.	 The message goes away when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle, and close the door. E Keyless Remote Reminder P. 222
	• Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak.	 Replace the battery as soon as possible. Replacing the Button Battery P. 676
₽ 1+©	 Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON. Right-hand drive type Appears after you unlock and open the driver's door. 	Turning on the Power P. 498
©- <mark>4</mark> 9	• Appears when the power mode is ACCESSORY.	_
©- W	• Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is ACCESSORY.	 Press the POWER button twice with your foot off the brake pedal to change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Message	Condition	Explanation
©•€	• Appears if the keyless remote's battery is too weak to turn on the power system or the key is not within operating range to turn on the power system. The beeper sounds six times.	 Bring the keyless remote in front of the POWER button to be touched with. If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 702
OFF HOLD OFF	• Appears if you press the POWER button while the vehicle is moving.	Emergency Power System Off P. 703
	 Appears when you change to N, and press the POWER button within five seconds. 	 The shift position remains in N for 15 minutes, then automatically switches to P. If you want to keep the transmission in N position (car wash mode) P. 508
	• Appears when the vehicle is stopped with the driver's seat belt unfastened and there is a chance that the vehicle may roll unintentionally.	 Press the P button before release the brake pedal when idling, parking or exiting the vehicle. Shift Operation P. 506

Instrument Panel

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the power system temperature is high.	 Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline. Park in a safe place, and cool the system down. Dverheating P. 706
*	• Appears when the High Voltage battery temperature is low.	Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.Goes off once you start driving as the High Voltage battery warms up.
	• Appears after the 12-volt battery charging system indicator comes on.	Your vehicle has less ability to accelerate and may be harder to start on an incline.Contact a dealer immediately.
	• Appears if the power system is in diagnostic mode.	 You may notice a decrease in available power. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. As a result of diagnostics, the power system indicator may come on. Power System Indicator P. 103

Message	Condition	Explanation
×F ⁱⁱ	 Appears when the High Voltage battery temperature is too low to operate (approx30°C or below). 	• You can start the engine and use the climate control system to warm up the interior, which will also warm the High Voltage battery enough for you to drive the vehicle.
*	 Appears when the High Voltage battery and other system control temperatures are too low to operate (approx40°C or below). 	You must wait for an increase in the ambient temperature or move the vehicle to a warmer location.Consult a dealer.

Message	Condition	Explanation
	 Appears when you have met following situations and EV mode is unabled. Battery Temperature Limits Exceeded. Battery Charge Too Low. Engine Too Cold. Cabin Being Heated. Speed Too High. Hard Acceleration Requested. 	• EV mode is available once the condition is improved or the cause that cancelled EV mode is cleared.
	 Appears when you have met following situations and EV mode has been automatically cancelled. When the High Voltage battery charge is low. When the velocity of your vehicle is high. When your vehicle's speed exceeds 40 km/h (25 mph) before the engine warms up enough. When depressing the accelerator pedal deeply. When driving on a slope. 	
	• Appears if the engine needs to be started when you press the EV button.	—

Message	Condition	Explanation
Øs	 Appears when the High Voltage battery is running extremely low. 	Contact a dealer immediately.
	 Appears when you depress the accelerator pedal while the shift position is in N. 	• Remove your foot off the accelerator pedal. When driving, depress the brake pedal and operate the shift position.
X	 Appears when you repeatedly change the shift position between P and other positions in short period. 	• Take some time before changing the shift position.
證+###	 Appears when you set the power mode to OFF while driving. 	• Immediately stop in a safe place, set the parking brake, then restart the power system. If the message disappears, continue driving.

Instrument Panel

Message	Condition	Explanation
⇔ ‡+ ∺≣	• Appears when you try to change the shift position without releasing your foot off the accelerator pedal.	• Release your foot off the accelerator pedal, then select a shift button.
100 + 100 100 + 100	 Appears when the P button is pressed while the vehicle is moving. Appears if you put the transmission into R while the vehicle is moving forward, or into D while the vehicle is reversing. 	 Make sure that the vehicle comes to a stop before operating the shift button.
* []+ ²	• Appears when you try to change the shift position without depressing the brake pedal.	• Depress the brake pedal, then select a shift button.
٥	 Appears when the temperature of the transmission is starting to get too hot. The performance of the vehicle may be reduced.	• Until the message disappears, reduce your speed and allow the system to cool down.

Message	Condition	Explanation
EØ	 Appears if there is a problem with the auto high- beam. 	 Manually operate the headlight switch. If you are driving with the high beam headlights when this happens, the headlights are changed to low beams.
62	 Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front. May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) 	 When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover. Radar Sensor P. 594 Honda Sensing P. 539
Ø	 Appears if the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high and some driver assist systems cannot be activated. 	 Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. Disappears - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally. Front Sensor Camera P. 592 Honda Sensing P. 539
•	 Appears if the area around the front sensor camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front. May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.) 	 When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera. Front Sensor Camera P. 592 Honda Sensing P. 539

Message	Condition	Explanation
ACC LKAS 80 km/h	• Appears when the system predicts the vehicle cutting in in front of you from the right and decrease your vehicle speed according to the cut-in vehicle.	 The system automatically keeps a safe distance from the cut-in vehicle when the system predicts the cutting in. How the system activates P. 569
	• Appears when the system predicts the vehicle cutting in in front of you from the left and decrease your vehicle speed according to the cut-in vehicle.	 The system automatically keeps a safe distance from the cut-in vehicle when the system predicts the cutting in. How the system activates P. 569
ACC OFF	Appears when ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled.	 You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves. Press the RES/+ button. ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553

Message	Condition	Explanation
	• Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC with LSF is in operation.	 ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
24	 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
≈ b+ D	• Appears when the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with LSF.	 ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
(White)	 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the driver's seat belt is unfastened. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
R	• Appears if the VSA or traction control function operates while ACC with LSF is in operation.	 ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
	• Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC with LSF.	 Reduce the speed, then set ACC with LSF. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
X	• Appears when ACC with LSF is cancelled due to excessive high vehicle speed.	 Reduce the speed, then reset ACC with LSF. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553

Message	Condition	Explanation
an + Sa	 Appears when the vehicle ahead of you resumes driving, after your vehicle has been stopped automatically by ACC with LSF. 	 Press the RES/+ or -/SET button or depress the accelerator pedal to resume. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
	 Appears when the shift position is changed to any position other than D while ACC with LSF is in operation. 	 ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
	 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the shift position is in any position other than D. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
19	• Appears when the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope while ACC with LSF is in operation.	 ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
! <i>\$</i> *	 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
	 Appears when the parking brake is applied automatically while ACC with LSF is in operation. 	 ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553 Parking Brake P. 595
©	 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the parking brake is applied. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553 Parking Brake P. 595

Message	Condition	Explanation
† 0	 Appears when pressing the –/SET button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed. 	 ACC with LSF cannot be set. Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553
† 0	• Appears if ACC with LSF is cancelled while your vehicle is automatically stopped by ACC with LSF.	Immediately depress the brake pedal.
a !	• Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds.	 Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.) Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 542

Message	Condition	Explanation
(Amber)	 Appears if the vehicle is about to veer out of the detected lane. 	 Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while. Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 570 Road Departure Mitigation System P. 578
	• Appears if the driver is merely resting his or her hands on the steering wheel or is not holding the steering wheel at all and the vehicle is about to veer out of the detected lane. A beeper will also sound.	 Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while. Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 570
(Red)	• Blinks if the driver is merely resting his or her hands on the steering wheel or is not holding the steering wheel at all. A beeper will also sound. If the driver continues to drive in this manner, the beeper will turn to a single long beep and LKAS will be deactivated.	 Take direct control of the steering; the message will disappear. Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 570
(White)	 Appears when the vehicle is likely to drive out of a detected lane. The Road Departure Mitigation system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane. 	 Take direct control of the steering and keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. The message will disappear after a while. Road Departure Mitigation System P. 578

Message	Condition	Explanation		
1005 OFF	• Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously if selected by customization.	 If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action. Indicators P. 100 		
Models with power tailgate				
Message	Condition	Explanation		
Ţ	• Appears when there is a problem with the power tailgate system.	Manually open or close the power tailgate.Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.		
Models with real time AWD with intelligent control system				
Message	Condition	Explanation		

iviessage	Condition	Explanation
AWD	• Appears if there is a problem with the real time AWD with intelligent control system.	• The engine drives the front wheels only in this state. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
H.	• Appears when the differential temperature is too high.	 Stop in a safe place, change to P, and idle the engine until the message disappears. If the message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System* P. 530

Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, high voltage battery charge level gauge, **POWER**/ **CHARGE** gauge, fuel gauge, and related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h or mph.

Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

Speedometer

Press the ***** (display/information) button repeatedly until the ***** icon is shown on the driver information interface. Press **ENTER**, then press and hold it again. The speedometer reading and the displayed measurements will switch between km/h and mph.

■Fuel Gauge

NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches 0. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

Shows the remaining High Voltage battery charge level.

POWER/CHARGE Gauge

Electric motor

The degree to which the electric motor is being powered is displayed by the readings on the **POWER** side.

Battery charge in progress

The degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged is displayed by the readings on the **CHARGE** side.

High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge

The High Voltage battery charge level may decrease under the following conditions:

- When the 12-volt battery has been replaced.
- When the 12-volt battery has been disconnected.
- When the High Voltage battery control system corrects its reading.

The charge level reading will be corrected automatically while driving.

Changes in the temperature of the High Voltage battery can increase or decrease the battery's charging capacity. If temperature changes cause the battery's capacity to change, the number of indicators in the battery charge level gauge may also change, even if the amount of charging remains the same.

Driver Information Interface

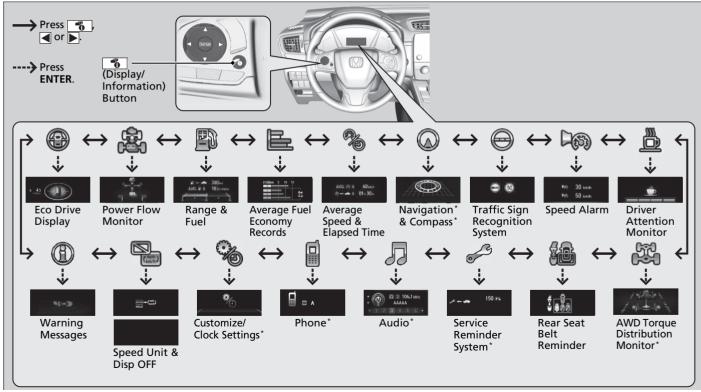
The driver information interface shows the odometer, trip meter, outside temperature indicator, and other gauges.

It also displays important messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

Switching the Display

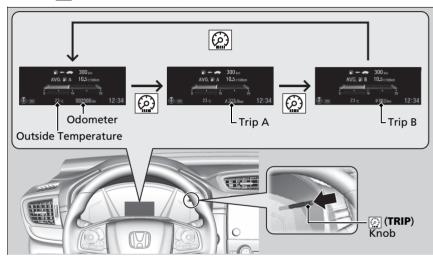
Main displays

Press the 🚯 (display/information) button, and then press 🖌 or 🕨 to change the display. Press ENTER to see detailed information.



Trip computer

Press the 😥 (**TRIP**) knob to change the display.



Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres or miles that your vehicle has accumulated.

Trip Meter	Trip Meter
Shows the total number of kilometres or miles driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.	Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the 👰 knob.
Resetting a trip meter	
To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the 😰 knob. The trip meter is reset to 0.0 .	
Average Fuel Economy	≫Average Fuel Economy
Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in I/100 km or mpg.	You can change when to reset the average fuel
The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.	economy. Disconting P. 161, 400
Range	
Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining power and fuel. This distance is estimated from the fuel economy of your previous trips.	
Elapsed Time	➢Elapsed Time
Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.	You can change when to reset the elapsed time. Customized Features P. 161, 400
Average Speed	₩Average Speed
Shows the average speed in km/h or mph since the last time Trip A or Trip B was	You can change when to reset the average speed.
reset.	Customized Features P. 161, 400

Instant Fuel Economy Gauge

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in I/100 km or mpg.

Service Reminder System*

Shows the service reminder system.

Service Reminder System * P. 626

Rear Seat Belt Reminder

Appears when any of the rear seat belts are latched or unlatched.

Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the outside temperature indicator blinks for ten seconds.

Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to $\pm 3^{\circ}$ C if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

Outside Temperature

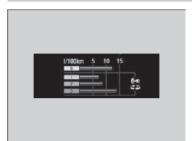
The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (19 mph).

It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

Use the driver information interface or audio/ information screen's customized features to correct the temperature.

Customized Features P. 161, 400

Average Fuel Economy Records



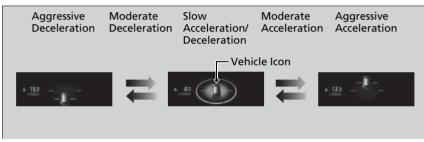
Shows the average fuel economy for the last three driving cycles (1-3), and the current driving cycle (0) in I/100 km or mpg.

Each time you set the power mode to ON, the display is updated, and the oldest record is deleted.

Eco Drive Display/Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

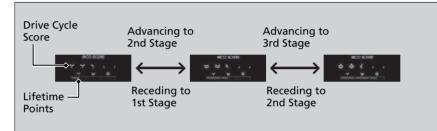
Eco Drive Display

The vehicle icon on the display moves forward or backward while driving. The more aggressive the acceleration is, the further the icon moves forward. The more aggressive the deceleration is, the further the icon moves backward. Keep the icon near the centre of the circle for better fuel economy while driving.



Drive Cycle Score/Lifetime Points

Appear for a few seconds when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Each has three stages. Depending on your driving style, the leaf icon(s) and the gauge increase or decrease to indicate that you have reached a different stage of fuel economy.

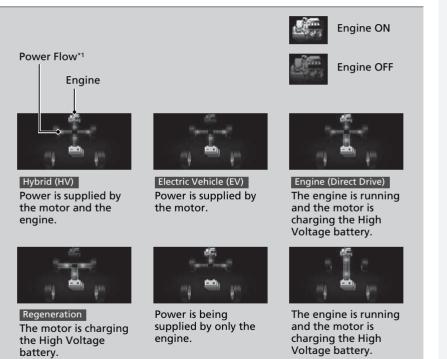


Resetting the Drive Cycle Score

- **1.** Make sure the shift position is in **P**. Turn the power mode to ON.
- 2. If ECON mode is on, press the ECON button to turn it off.
- 3. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- 4. Turn the power mode to ON again.
 - ▶ Make sure to complete steps from 4 through 6 within 30 seconds.
- 5. Depress the brake pedal twice.
- 6. Press the ECON button twice.
 - ▶ The colour of the ambient meter will turn to monochrome.
- 7. Turn the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Power Flow Monitor

Displays the power flow of the motor and engine, indicating the vehicle's power source and whether the battery is being charged.



*1:AWD models also display the power flow of the rear wheels.

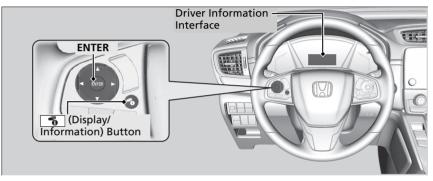
Power Flow Monitor

While the vehicle is stationary with the engine running, the following may appear on the driver information interface.



Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor analyses steering inputs to determine if the vehicle is being driven in a manner consistent with drowsy or inattentive driving. If it determines that the vehicle is being driven in such a manner, it will display the degree of the driver's attention in the Driver Information Interface.





When the (display/information) button is pressed, bars in the Driver Information Interface light up in white to indicate the degree of the driver's attention.

Switching the Display P. 147

Driver Attention Monitor

The Driver Attention Monitor cannot always detect if the driver is tired or inattentive.

Regardless of the system's feedback, if you are feeling tired, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed.



If the number of bars drops to two, the Driver Attention Monitor will display the white coffee cup (without the bars) to warn the driver that his or her attention level is low.



If the number of bars drops to one, a beep will sound, the steering wheel will vibrate, and the coffee cup will turn to amber to warn the driver that he or she needs a break as his or her attention level is too low. If the coffee cup lights up in amber, stop in a safe location and rest for as long as needed. The amber coffee cup warning will disappear when the **ENTER** button is pressed or when the system has determined that the driver is driving normally. If the driver does not take a break and the

monitor continues to detect that the driver is very tired, the coffee cup will light up in amber again after approximately 15 minutes, accompanied by a beep and steering wheel vibrations.

The warnings do not appear when the travelling time is 30 minutes or less.

156

The Driver Attention Monitor resets when

- the power system is turned off.
- the driver unfastens the seat belt and opens the door while the vehicle is stopped.

For the Driver Attention Monitor to function

- the vehicle must be travelling above 40 km/h (25 mph).
- the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator must be off.

Depending on driving conditions or other factors, the Driver Attention Monitor may not function in the following circumstances.

- the steering assist function of the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is active. ► Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 570
- the condition of the road is poor, e.g. the surface is unpaved or bumpy.
- it is windy.
- the driver is frequently operating the vehicle in an assertive manner such as changing lanes or accelerating.

Customizing

You can change the Driver Attention Monitor settings. Select **Tactile And Audible Alert, Tactile Alert Only**, or **OFF**.

Customized Features P. 161, 400

Sor the Driver Attention Monitor to function

The bars in the Driver Information Interface remain greyed out unless the Driver Attention Monitor is functioning.

AWD Torque Distribution Monitor*



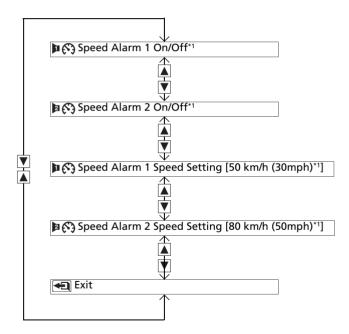
The indicators on the display show the amount of torque being transferred to the right front, left front, right rear, and left rear wheels.

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System* P. 530

Speed Alarm

Sets the speed alarm on and changes the speed alarm setting.

Each time you press the $\mathbf{A}/\mathbf{\nabla}$ button, the speed alarm setting changes as follows:



*1:Default Setting

Turn-by-Turn Directions*

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Traffic Sign Recognition System

Shows the traffic sign recognition system. Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 584

Audio*

Shows the current audio information.

Audio System Basic Operation P. 319

Phone*

Shows the current phone information.

Hands-Free Telephone System P. 449

➢Turn-by-Turn Directions *

The driver information interface shows a compass when the route guidance is not used.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on or not during the route guidance. Customized Features P. 400

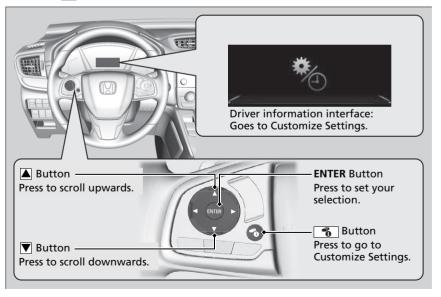
Models with colour audio system

Customized Features

Use the driver information interface to customize certain features.

How to customize

Select the \Im (Customize Settings) screen by pressing the \bigcirc button while the power mode is in ON, the vehicle is at a complete stop, and the shift position is in \square . Select \Im , then press the **ENTER** button.

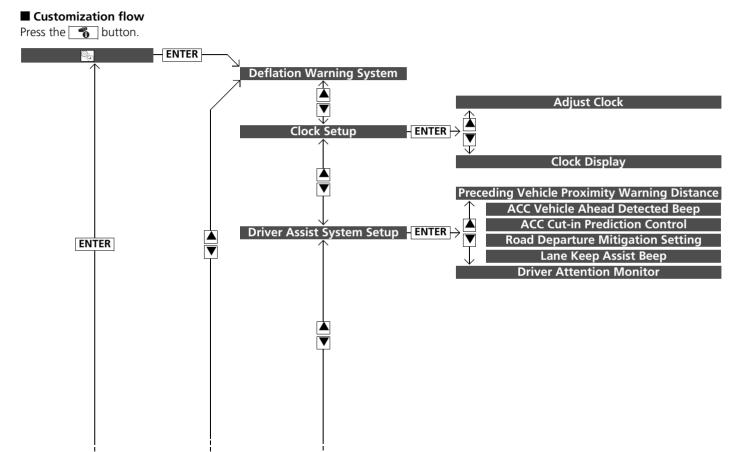


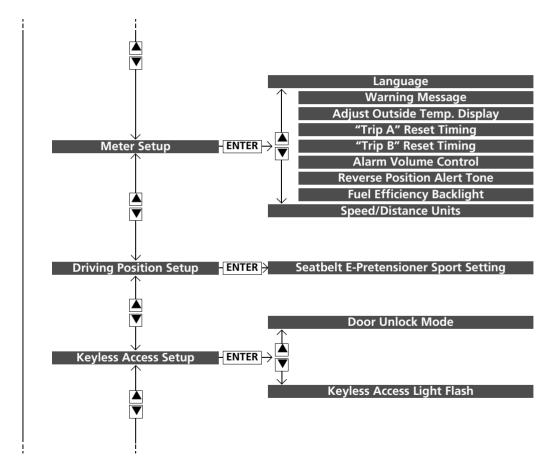
Customized Features

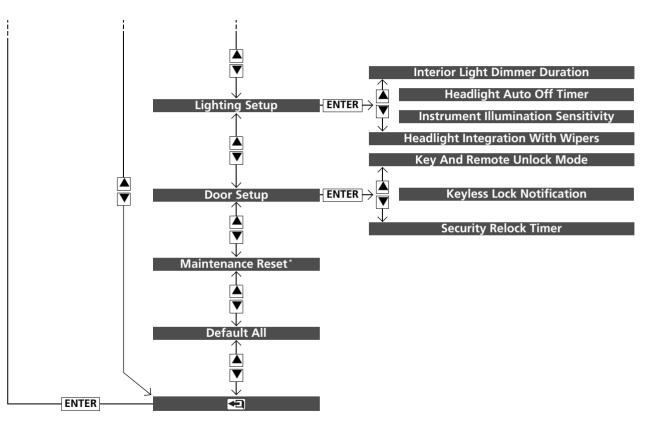
To customize other features, press the \square/\blacksquare button.

- List of customizable options P. 165
- **Example of customization settings** P. 171

When you customize settings, shift to **P**.







List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Deflation Warning System	—	Initialises the deflation warning system.	Initialise/Cancel
Clock Setup	Adjust Clock	Adjust the time. Adjusting the Clock P. 180	_
	Clock Display	Sets time display 24 hour, 12 hour or off.	24h/12h*1/OFF

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Pro Dis AC De Driver Assist System Setup Ro	Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance	Changes the distance at which CMBS alerts.	Far/Normal*1/Near
	ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of ACC range.	ON/OFF*1
	ACC Cut-in Prediction Control	Turns the ACC cut-in prediction control feature on and off.	ON*1/OFF
	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.	Normal ^{*1} /Delayed/ Warning Only/Early
	Lane Keep Assist Beep	Causes the system to beep when the LKAS is suspended.	ON/OFF*1
	Driver Attention Monitor	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor.	Tactile And Audible Alert ^{*1} /Tactile Alert Only/ OFF

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Language	Changes the displayed language.	English ^{*1} /French/Spanish/ German/Italian/ Portuguese/Russian/ Finnish/Norwegian/ Swedish/Danish/Dutch/ Polish/Turkish
	Warning Message	Switches warning message to be displayed or not.	ON/OFF*1
Meter Setup	Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C
	"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A, average fuel economy A, average speed A, and elapsed time A.	When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset*1
	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B, average fuel economy B, average speed B, and elapsed time B.	When Fully Refueled/ When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset ^{*1}

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Alarm Volume Control	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Max/Mid*1/Min
	Reverse Position Alert Tone	Turns the reverse alert tone on and off.	ON*1/OFF
Meter Setup	Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	ON*1/OFF
	Speed/Distance Units	Selects the trip computer units.	Left-hand drive type mph·miles/km/h·km ^{*1} Right-hand drive type mph·miles ^{*1} /km/h·km
Driving Position Setup	Seatbelt E- Pretensioner Sport Setting	Turns the auto seat belt tension setting for the seat belt e-pretensioner on and off.	ON*1/OFF

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Keyless Access	Door Unlock Mode	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	Driver Door Only ^{*1} /All Doors
Setup	Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/ lock the doors.	ON*1/OFF
Lighting Setup	Interior Light Dimmer Duration	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	60sec/30sec*1/15sec
	Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	60sec/30sec/15sec*1/0sec
	Instrument Illumination Sensitivity	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.	Max/High/Mid ^{*1} /Low/Min
	Headlight Integration With Wipers	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.	ON*1/OFF

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Key And Remote Unlock Mode	Sets up either the driver's door or all doors to unlock on the first operation of the remote or built-in key.	Driver Door Only ^{*1} /All Doors
Door Setup	Keyless Lock Notification	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	ON*1/OFF
	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	90sec/60sec/30sec*1
Maintenance Reset*		Cancels/Resets the service reminder display when you have performed the maintenance service.	Cancel/All Due Items/ Item A Only/Item B Only/ Item 0 Only/Item 1 Only/ Item 2 Only/Item 3 Only/ Item 4 Only/Item 5 Only/ Item 6 Only/Item 7 Only/ Item 8 Only/Item 9 Only
Default All	_	Cancels/Resets all the customized settings as default.	OK/Cancel

Example of customization settings

The steps for changing the **"Trip A" Reset Timing** setting to **When Fully Refueled** are shown below. The default setting for **"Trip A" Reset Timing** is **Manual Reset**. **1.** Press the **1** button to select **1**, then





- 2. Press the ▲/▼ button until Meter Setup appears on the display.
- 3. Press the ENTER button.

press the **ENTER** button.

Language appears first in the display.





-	
"Trip A" Reset Timing	
When Fully Refuel	a li
when runy keiden	1/4



- **4.** Press the **▲**/**▼** button until **"Trip A" Reset Timing** appears on the display, then press the **ENTER** button.
 - ► The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select When Fully Refueled, When Ignition Is Turned Off, Manual Reset, or 📢 (Exit).
- **5.** Press the \blacktriangle / \bigtriangledown button and select **When** Fully Refueled, then press the ENTER button.
 - The When Fully Refueled screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
- **6.** Press the $\blacktriangle/\bigtriangledown$ button until appears on the display, then press the ENTER button.
- 7. Repeat Step 6 until you return to the normal screen.

Head-up Display*

Shows the **POWER/CHARGE** gauge, shift position indicator, traffic sign recognition system, or current mode for ACC with LSF along with the vehicle speed. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

To turn the head-up display on and off: Press the HUD button.

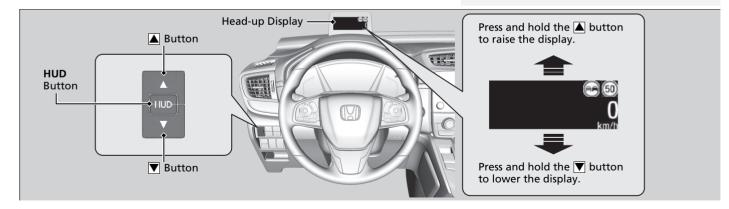
The display can be moved up and down to come level with your eyes. The head-up display will be displayed automatically when setting the power mode to ON, if it was displayed while you previously set the power mode to OFF. **To raise or lower the head-up display**: Press and hold the ▲ or ▼ button until the desired position is reached.

➢Head-up Display*

If the head-up display was displayed while you set the power mode to OFF on your previous drive, when you set the power mode to ON, the angle of the head-up display is automatically adjusted according to the setting stored in the driving position memory system.

Avoid touching the screen of the head-up display as it is coated with a unique agent.

When you clean the screen, first blow away any debris or dust with a blower suited for cleaning camera lenses. Then gently wipe the lens with a lens cleaning cloth or other soft fine-grained cloth: Do not use a cleaner or detergent.





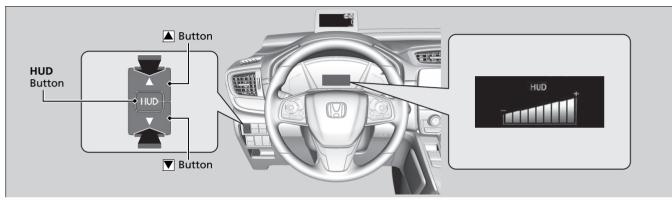
System Message Indicator

The display also shows the following warnings.

- System Message Indicator: Appears when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.
 - Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 123
- Lane Departure Warning: When your vehicle is too close to the traffic lane lines, the lane departure warning appears.
 - Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 570
- Head-up Warning Lights: Flash when the message appears on the driver information interface.
 - Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 542
 - Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553

Adjusting the Head-up Display Brightness

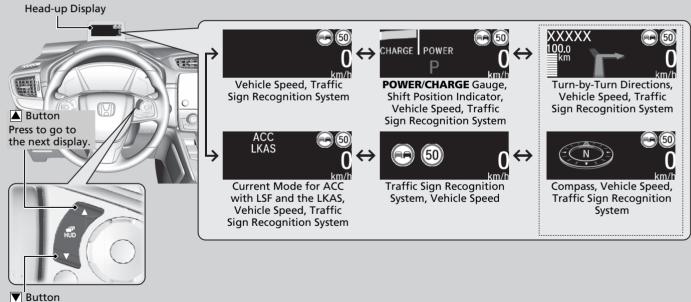
Pressing and holding the **HUD** button for few seconds enters the head-up display brightness adjusting mode. Use \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown button to adjust.



To Change Head-up Display Content

To change the number of items that come on along with the vehicle speed on the head-up display, do the following:

Select the head-up display contents by pressing the $\boxed{}/\boxed{}$ button to change the display.



Press to go to the previous display.

Vehicle Speed

Shows your driving speed in km/h or mph.

POWER/CHARGE Gauge

Electric motor

The degree to which the electric motor is being powered is displayed by the readings on the **POWER** side.

Battery charge in progress

The degree to which the High Voltage battery is being charged is displayed by the readings on the **CHARGE** side.

Shift Position Indicator

Shows the current shift position. Shift Position Indicator P. 105

Traffic Sign Recognition System

Shows the traffic sign recognition system.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 584

Current Mode for ACC with LSF and the LKAS

Shows the current mode for ACC with LSF and the LKAS.

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) P. 553

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 570

Turn-by-Turn Directions

Shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination linked with the navigation system.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

➢Turn-by-Turn Directions

The head-up display shows a compass when the route guidance is not in use.

You can select whether the turn-by-turn display comes on or not during the route guidance.

Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

. . .

Ultrasonic Sensors *	211
Tilt Sensor*	212
Super Locking *	
Opening and Closing the Windows	214
Panoramic Roof*	
Operating the Switches Around th	e
Steering Wheel	
POWER Button	220
Turn Signals	223
Light Switches	224
Active Cornering Lights*	227
Fog Lights	228
Auto High-Beam (High Beam Suppo	ort
System)	229

Daytime Running Lights	232
Wipers and Washers	233
Brightness Control	237
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button	239
Heated Windscreen Button*	240
Driving Position Memory System*	241
Adjusting the Steering Wheel	243
Adjusting the Mirrors	
Interior Rearview Mirror	244
Power Door Mirrors	245
Adjusting the Seats	248
Interior Lights/Interior Convenience	
Items	
Climate Control System	278

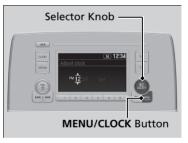
* Not available on all models

Adjusting the Clock

Models without navigation system

You can adjust the time in the clock display with the power mode in ON.

Adjusting the Time



Models with colour audio system Using the MENU/CLOCK button

- Press and hold the MENU/CLOCK button.
 Adjust clock is selected.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to change hour, then press \bigotimes .
- **3.** Rotate 🗇 to change mout, then press
- පි.

➢Adjusting the Clock

Models with navigation system

The clock is automatically updated through the navigation system, so the time does not need to be adjusted.

Models with colour audio system

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

Customized Features P. 392

≥Using the MENU/CLOCK button

Models with colour audio system

These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob. Rotate \bigcirc to select. Press \circlearrowright to enter.



Models with Display Audio

- Using the Settings menu on the audio/ information screen
- **1.** Select the (HOME) icon, then select **Settings**.
- 2. Select Clock.
- 3. Select Clock Adjustment.
- **4.** Select \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to change hour.
- 5. Select ▲ or ▼ to change minute, then select OK.

■ Using the Settings menu on the audio/information screen

Models with Display Audio

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock and turn the clock display on and off.

Customized Features P. 400

Models with Display Audio

You cannot adjust the time while the vehicle is moving.



Models with colour audio system

■ Using the settings menu on the driver information interface

- 1. Press the **b** button to select **b**, then press the **ENTER** button.
- **2.** Press the ▲/▼ button until **Clock Setup** appears on the display.
- 3. Press the ENTER button.
- 4. Press the ENTER button to select Adjust Clock.

Solution Settings menu on the driver information interface

Models with colour audio system

You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock and turn the clock display on and off.

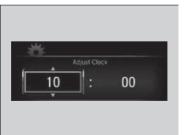
Customized Features P. 161

Models with Display Audio

The clock in the instrument panel also changes when the audio/information screen clock is adjusted.

182





- Press the ▲/▼ button to change hour, then press the ENTER button.
- **6.** Press the ▲/▼ button to change minute, then press the **ENTER** button.
 - The display will return to the normal screen.

Key Types and Functions

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



Use the keys to turn on and off the power system, and to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

You can also use the remote transmitter to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

Key Types and Functions

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

Immobilizer System P. 208

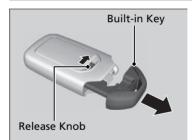
Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

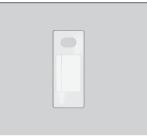
Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/ unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

≫Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle.

If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

If you lose your key and you cannot activate the power system, contact a dealer.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/ unlocking the doors and tailgate, or to activate the power system.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or activating the power system may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

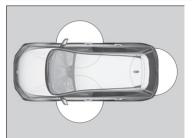
- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, mobile phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use. The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

Using the Keyless Access System



When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the tailgate. You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.

▶ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors and tailgate.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

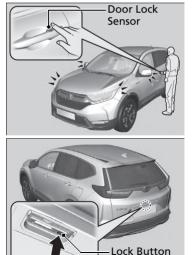
Doors and tailgate relocked: The light goes off immediately.

Interior Lights P. 259

≥Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).



Locking the doors and tailgate

Touch the door lock sensor on the front door or press the lock button on the tailgate.

Some exterior lights flash three times; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.



Outer Handle

Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Grab the driver's door handle:

► The driver's door unlocks.

► Some exterior lights flash once. Grab the front passenger's door handle:

- All the doors and tailgate unlock.
- Some exterior lights flash once.

Press the outer handle:

- ► The tailgate unlocks.
- Some exterior lights flash once.
- Using the Outer Handle P. 206

≥Using the Keyless Access System

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be locked or unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by locking or unlocking the doors.
- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door and door glass.

≥Using the Keyless Access System

The light flash setting and unlock mode setting can be customized using the driver information interface or audio/information screen.

Models with colour audio system

Customized Features P. 161 Models with Display Audio

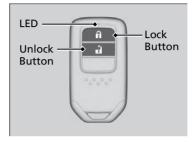
Customized Features P. 400

Models with power tailgate

You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

Customized Features P. 400

Using the Remote Transmitter



Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the lock button.

Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

Once:

Some exterior lights flash once, and the driver's door unlocks.

Twice:

▶ The remaining doors and tailgate unlock.

■Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock. You can change the relock timer setting.

Models with colour audio system

Customized Features P. 161
 Models with Display Audio
 Customized Features P. 400

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

Replacing the Button Battery P. 676

The remote transmitter will not work when:

• The power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.

➢Using the Remote Transmitter

Right-hand drive type

You cannot lock any doors from the outside when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle, and the beeper sounds. If you want to lock a door while the remote is still in the vehicle, do any of the following four times:

- Press the lock button on the keyless remote.
- Turn the key in the cylinder to lock.
- Press the door lock button on the door handle or the tailgate.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door is open.

You can customize the door unlock mode setting. Models with colour audio system

Customized Features P. 161

Models with Display Audio

Customized Features P. 400

Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the remote does not work, use the key instead.



Fully insert the key and turn it.

■Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time. When unlocking, the driver's door unlocks first. Turning the key a second time within a few seconds does not unlock the remaining doors and the tailgate.

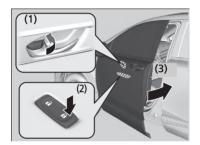
You can customize the door unlock mode setting.

Models with colour audio system Customized Features P. 161 Models with Display Audio Customized Features P. 400

Unlocking the doors with the key causes the security system to alarm. Always unlock the doors with the keyless access system or remote transmitter.

Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward (1) or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction (2), then pull and hold the outside door handle (3). Close the door, then release the handle.

■ Locking the passenger's doors Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

Lockout prevention system

The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

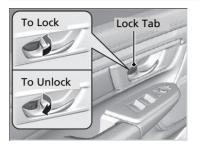
➢Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

Using the Lock Tab



Locking a door Push the lock tab forward.

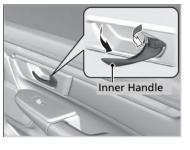
Unlocking a door Pull the lock tab rearward.

■ Using the Lock Tab

When you lock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.

When you unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, only the driver's door will unlock.

Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle



Pull the front door inner handle.

The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

▶ Unlocking Using the Front Door Inner Handle

The front door inner handles are designed to allow front seat occupants to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that front seat occupants never pull a front door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided. Childproof Door Locks P. 195

Using the Master Door Lock Switch



Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

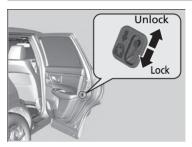
≥Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock either front door using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

When opening the door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Models without power tailgate

- Open the tailgate all the way.
- ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

All models

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- Avoid possible damage.
- Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
 Carbon Monoxide Gas P 96

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area, or using a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

Models with power tailgate

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver side control panel, pressing the outer handle or button on the tailgate, or by raising and lowering your foot under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in \mathbf{P} .

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Models with power tailgate

Opening or closing a power tailgate while any part of a passenger is in the tailgate's operating path can cause serious injury. Make sure all passengers or objects are clear of the tailgate operating range before opening or closing the tailgate.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed. Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Models with power tailgate

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:

- You activate the power system while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

If you close the power tailgate with all the doors locked, the power tailgate locks automatically and some exterior lights flash.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

Using the Hands Free Access



Use a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.

Some exterior lights flash twice, then the tailgate begins to move.

▶ Using the Hands Free Access

During heavy rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes very wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

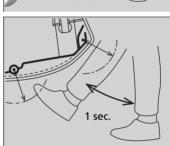
When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.

To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the audio/information screen and then select OFF for the feature.

Customized Features P. 400

If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long, the power tailgate does not open or close. This function will not operate if you don't have the keyless remote on you. Please make sure you have the keyless remote on you.

The duration of the kicking motion should be approximately one second.



Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Some exterior lights will flash.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Customizing when to open the tailgate

Anytime: The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time. This is the default setting.

When Unlocked: The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked.

Customized Features P. 400

Dpening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

If you close the power tailgate when all the doors are locked, the power tailgate locks automatically.

If you replace the 12-volt battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than genuine Honda accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully closed before you start the vehicle.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

Using the Power Tailgate Button



To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second. ► Some exterior lights will flash.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the button for more than one second.

Depending and Closing the Tailgate P. 196

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

To close the tailgate, press the outer handle again while the tailgate opening.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction. Dpening/Closing the Power Tailgate*

- Do not leave the key in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the tailgate. The beeper sounds and the tailgate cannot be locked.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

Customized Features P. 400

Using the Tailgate Inner Button



Press the button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press and release the button again, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

Programming Tailgate Position





The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programmed.

To program:

- **1.** Open the tailgate to the desired position.
 - If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its upper most position and follow the next step.
- **2.** Press and hold the tailgate inner button until you hear short two beeps following one long buzzer.

➢Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the inner button.

Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

≫Auto-Closer

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you push the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

Power Tailgate Fall Detection

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, by snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Using the Outer Handle



When all the doors are unlocked or press the tailgate unlock button on the remote transmitter, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the outer handle and lift open the tailgate.

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

If you close the tailgate when the driver's door is locked, the tailgate locks automatically.

Some exterior lights flash three times.

➢Using the Outer Handle

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- Do not leave the keyless remote inside the luggage area and close the tailgate. The beeper sounds and the tailgate cannot be locked.



Controls

Using the Remote Transmitter*

Tailgate Unlock Button Press the tailgate unlock button to unlock the tailgate.

≥Using the Remote Transmitter*

If you have unlocked and opened the tailgate using the remote transmitter or keyless remote, when closing, the tailgate locks automatically.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the power system. Each key contains electronic transmitters that use electronic signals to verify the key.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **POWER** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **POWER** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **POWER** button.

Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

➢Immobilizer System

NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact your dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

Right-hand drive type

Apply and hold the brake pedal before set the power mode to ON the first time after the battery has been disconnected.

Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet, or doors are opened without the remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently and all the exterior lights flash.

■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter, or keyless access system.

Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates. The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release handle.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may activate once the battery is recharged or replaced. If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

Security System Alarm

Models with ultrasonic sensors or tilt sensor

The system may accidentally activate such as when:

- The vehicle is parked in an automated garage.
- The vehicle is being washed with highly pressurized water or being put through an automated car wash.
- The vehicle is being transported by train, ferry or trailer.
- The vehicle is subjected to heavy rain or stormy weather.
- Ice is being removed from the vehicle.

You can use ultrasonic sensor **OFF** button and Tilt sensor **OFF** button not to accidentally activate the security system alarm.

Ultrasonic Sensors* P. 211
 Tilt Sensor* P. 212

Ultrasonic Sensors*

The ultrasonic sensors activate only when the security system alarm is set. If the sensors detect an intruder moving around inside or entering the interior of the vehicle through a window, the sensor will activate the alarm.

■ To set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensors

You can set the security system alarm without activating the ultrasonic sensors.



To turn off the ultrasonic sensor system, press the ultrasonic sensor OFF button after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

▶ The 😭 is on in red.

To turn it on again, press the ultrasonic sensor OFF button.

Ultrasonic sensors is turned on every time you set the security system alarm, even if you turned it off the last time.

➢Ultrasonic Sensors *

Whether the ultrasonic sensors has been activated or not, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter or keyless access system, not the key.

It is possible to confirm whether the vehicle security system was activated without your knowledge. If the security system has been activated, the security will blink for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you turn the power system on, the a will stop blinking after 5 seconds.

If the ultrasonic sensor is malfunctioning or there is another problem, the $\overline{\textcircled{R}}$ will come on for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system. If, however, you turn the power system on, the $\overline{\textcircled{R}}$ will shut off.

The security system may accidentally activate by ultrasonic sensors such as when:

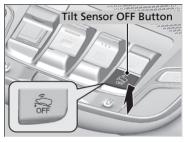
- Someone is in the vehicle
- A window is open
- Accessories or clothes are hanging in the vehicle

Tilt Sensor*

The tilt sensor activates only when the security system alarm is set. If someone raises the vehicle in an attempt to tow the vehicle or remove the wheels etc., the sensor will activate the alarm.

■ To set the security system alarm without activating the tilt sensor

You can set the security system without activating the tilt sensor.



To turn off the tilt sensor system, press the tilt sensor OFF button after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). The is on in red.

To turn it on again, press the tilt sensor OFF button.

Tilt sensor is turned on every time you set the security system alarm, even if you turned it off the last time.

■Tilt Sensor*

Whether the tilt sensor has been activated or not, the security system can only be turned off by the remote transmitter or keyless access system, not the key.

It is possible to confirm whether the vehicle security system was activated without your knowledge. If the security system has been activated, the security system has been activated, the security blink for 5 minutes after you unlock the door and disable the system.

If, however, you turn the power system on, the similar stop blinking after 5 seconds.

If, however, you turn the power system on, the $\ensuremath{\textcircled{}}$ will shut off.

Do not set the tilt sensor when the vehicle is lifted or jacked up.

Super Locking*

The super locking function disables the lock tabs on all doors.

■ To activate the super locking function

- Turn the key in the driver's door towards the vehicle front twice within five seconds.
- Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within five seconds.
- Touch the door lock sensor on the door handle or press the lock button on the tailgate twice within five seconds.

■ To cancel the super locking function

Unlock the driver's door with the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

Super Locking*

No one must be inside the vehicle with the super locking set. Persons locked in can get seriously sick or die from the heat built inside the vehicle if left in the sun.

Make sure there is no one inside the vehicle before setting the super locking.

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

Once the super locking function has been enabled, it will remain enabled even if you unlock the tailgate.

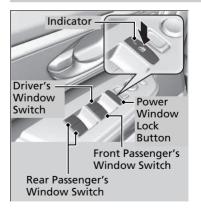
Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is switched on (pushed in, indicator on), you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



Manual operation

To open: Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached. **To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

Automatic operation

To open: Push the switch down firmly. **To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

Dpening/Closing the Power Windows

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

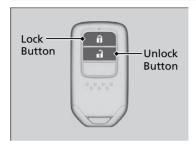
Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

Opening/Closing the Windows and the Panoramic Roof* with the Remote



To open: Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

To close: Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows and panoramic roof stop midway, repeat the procedure.

Dpening/Closing the Power Windows

Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

You cannot fully open the rear windows.

Closing the Windows and the Panoramic Roof* with the Key



To close: Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows and panoramic roof at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

You can only operate the panoramic roof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the panoramic roof.

➢Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

Opening or closing the panoramic roof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the panoramic roof before opening or closing it.

WARNING: Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

NOTICE

Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

The panoramic roof and sunshade can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to OFF (LOCK).

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

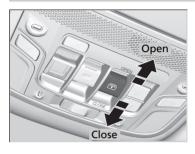
≥Opening/Closing the Panoramic Roof

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the panoramic roof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the panoramic roof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes. Make sure that all objects, including fingers, are clear of the panoramic roof.

You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the panoramic roof.

- Depending/Closing the Windows and the Panoramic Roof* with the Remote P. 215
- Closing the Windows and the Panoramic Roof* with the Key P. 215

Using the Sunshade Switch



Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly. **To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunshade automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunshade midway, push the switch briefly.

Manual operation

To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached. **To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

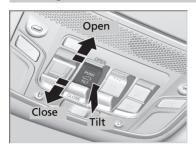
■Using the Sunshade Switch

The sunshade can be opened or closed to adjust the amount of light that enters the cabin.

When you use the sunshade switch to open the sunshade, the panoramic roof does not move.

The sunshade cannot be fully closed if the panoramic roof is open. When you close the sunshade with the panoramic roof open, the sunshade stops close to the panoramic roof glass. When you push the switch forward again, the sunshade and the panoramic roof close together.

Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



Automatic operation

To open: Pull the switch back firmly. **To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The panoramic roof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the panoramic roof midway, push the switch briefly.

Manual operation

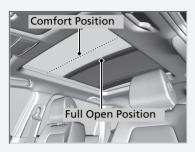
To open: Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached. **To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

■ Tilting the panoramic roof up

To tilt: Push on the centre of the panoramic roof switch.

To close: Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

≥Using the Panoramic Roof Switch



The panoramic roof cannot be fully opened in a single operation. The panoramic roof has a "comfort" position or wind noise reduction position at which the roof first stops. To open fully, pull the switch back again after the roof has stopped at this position.

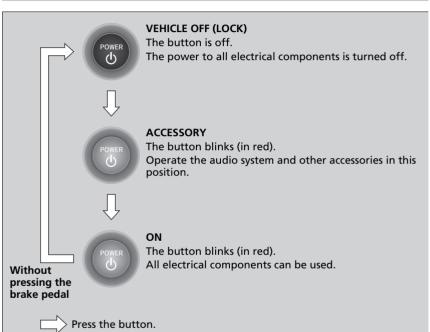
Whenever the panoramic roof is opening, the sunshade moves along with it. However, when the panoramic roof is closing, the sunshade does not move.

When you tilt open the panoramic roof, the sunshade opens slightly to let in fresh air. When you close the panoramic roof from this position, the sunshade returns to its closed position.

Opening the panoramic roof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the panoramic roof panel or motor.

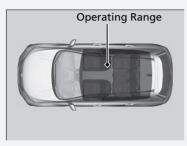
POWER Button

Changing the Power Mode



➢POWER Button

POWER Button Operating Range You can start the power system when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the power system may not start when you push the **POWER** button. If the power system does not start, refer to the following link.

► If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 702

The power system may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **POWER** button is on (in red), if the power system is on.

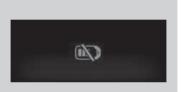
Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in \square and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the 12-volt battery.

Power Mode Reminder

If you open the driver's door when the power mode is in ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

Keyless Remote Reminder



Warning buzzers may sound from inside and/ or outside the vehicle to remind you that the keyless remote is out of the vehicle. If the buzzer continues even after the remote is put back inside, place it within its operational range.

When the power mode is in ON

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and the driver's door is closed, a warning buzzer sounds from both inside and outside the vehicle. A warning message on the driver information interface notifies the driver inside that the remote is outside of the vehicle.

When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle, and all the doors are closed, a warning buzzer sounds from outside the vehicle.

➢Keyless Remote Reminder

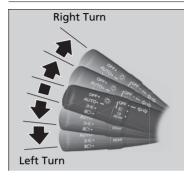
When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the power system has been turned on, you can no longer change the **POWER** button mode or restart the power system. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **POWER** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to activate. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also activate even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

Turn Signals



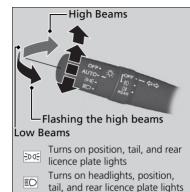
The turn signals can be used when the power system is in ON.

One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push up or down and release the turn signal lever, the exterior turn signals and turn signal indicator blink three times. This feature can be used when signalling for a lane change.

Light Switches

Manual Operation



Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in **P**.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of **P** and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

➢Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

▶ Indicators P. 111

Do not leave the lights on when the power system is off because it will cause the 12-volt battery to discharge.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

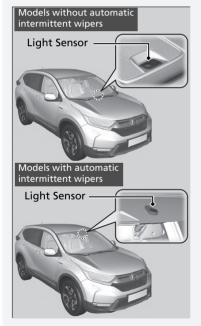
The headlights come on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

Mutomatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



Headlight Integration with Wipers

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**. The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF(LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

However, when the switch is in $\exists d \in J$, the position lights remain on.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a lights on reminder chime.

➢Headlight Integration with Wipers

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**. The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

You can turn the headlight integration with wipers function on and off.

Models with colour audio system

Customized Features P. 161 Models with Display Audio

Mutomatic Operation (automatic lighting control)

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting. Models with colour audio system

Customized Features P. 161

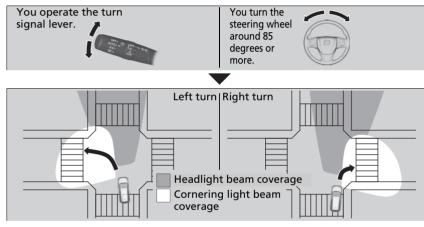
Models with Display Audio

Customized Features P. 400

Active Cornering Lights*

Enhance the visibility of the corner(s) when making a turn. With the power mode in ON, the headlights on, and the vehicle speed at less than 40 km/h (25 mph), the cornering light(s) comes on either when operating the turn signals or the steering wheel, or put the transmission into $[\mathbf{R}]$.

■ The corner where you are making a turn is illuminated when:



Headlight Cornering

light beam

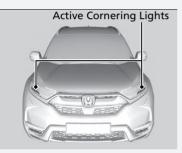
coverage

Both front corners are illuminated when:

You put the transmission into **R**.

Active Cornering Lights*

The active cornering lights go off automatically after five minutes. To resume the lights on, recreate the same condition; putting the turn signal lever or steering wheel in the centre position, then operate it again, or if the transmission has been in \mathbb{R} , move it to another position momentarily.



* Not available on all models

beam coverage

Fog Lights

Front fog lights

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

Rear fog light

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

Front and Rear Fog Lights



■ To turn the front fog lights on Rotate the switch up from the OFF position to the ‡ position. The ‡ indicator comes on.

■ To turn the front and rear fog lights on Rotate the switch one position up from the 約 position. The 約 and 0 indicators come on.

To turn the rear fog light on

Rotate the switch one position up from the D position and then rotate the switch one position down from the D position. The D indicator stays on.

To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)

Using a camera mounted to the inside of the windscreen, this system detects light sources ahead of the vehicle. Depending on the light source, the system automatically switches the headlights to high beam for optimal visibility at night.

The system operates when:

- The headlight switch is in AUTO.
 The lever is in the low beam position.
- The low beams are on and the system recognises that you are driving at night.
- The vehicle speed is above 40 km/h (25 mph).

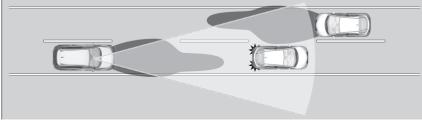


How it works

When the camera detects lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights remain in low beam.

When the camera detects no lights coming from a preceding or oncoming vehicle, the headlights change to high beam.

The view angle or distance that the camera can detect lights ahead differs depending on conditions, such as the brightness of the lights and the weather.



Muto High-Beam (High Beam Support System)

The auto high-beam determines when to change the headlight beams by responding to the brightness of the lights ahead of your vehicle. In the following cases, the system may not respond to the lights properly:

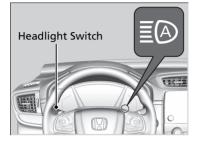
- The brightness of the lights from the preceding or oncoming vehicle is intense or poor.
- Visibility is poor due to the weather (rain, snow, fog, windscreen frost, etc.).
- Other light sources, such as streetlights and electric billboards are illuminating the road ahead.
- The brightness level of the road ahead constantly changes.
- The road is bumpy or with many curves.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you, or a vehicle in front of you is not in the preceding or oncoming direction.
- Your vehicle is tilted with a heavy load in the rear.

If you find the timing of beam changes inconvenient for driving, change the headlight beams manually.

If you do not want the system to be activated at any time when the headlight switch is in **AUTO**, consult a dealer or disable the system.

Disabling or Re-enabling the System P. 231

Operating the System



To activate the system, turn the headlight switch to **AUTO** and then set the headlights to low beam. The auto high-beam indicator will come on.

Light Switches P. 224

Operating the System

For the auto high-beam to work properly:

- Do not place an object that reflects light on the dashboard.
- Keep the windscreen around the camera clean.
- Do not attach an object, sticker or film to the area around the camera.

If the camera receives a strong impact, or repairing of the area near the camera is required, consult a dealer.

If the sease appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the message appears:

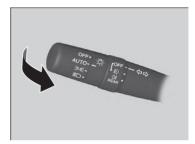
• Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

The high beams remain on unless:

- You have been driving below 24 km/h (15 mph) for an extended amount of time.
- The speed of the vehicle drops below 10 km/h (6 mph).
- The windscreen wipers have been running at a high speed for more than a few seconds.
- You enter a well lit location.

If needed, you can temporarily turn the system off manually. Turn on the high beams by pushing the lever forward until you hear a click, or flash the high beams once by pulling the lever toward you. To turn the system back on, pull and hold the lever towards you for a few seconds.

Disabling or Re-enabling the System



Disable or re-enable the system when the vehicle is parked and the power mode is in ON and the light switch is in the **AUTO** position. **Disabling the system:** Pull the light switch lever toward you and hold it for at least 40 seconds. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink twice.

Re-enabling the system: Pull the light switch lever toward you and hold it for at least 30 seconds. The auto high-beam indicator in the meter will blink once.

Disabling or Re-enabling the System

The auto high-beam is in the previously selected disabled or re-enabled setting each time you turn the power system on.

Daytime Running Lights

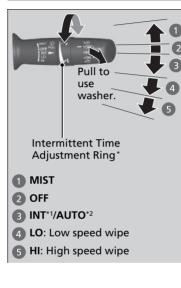
The position/daytime running lights come on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The headlight switch is **AUTO** or **OFF**.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the headlight switch is in **AUTO** and it is getting darker outside. Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

Wipers and Washers

Windscreen Wipers/Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

MIST

The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT^{*1}/AUTO^{*2}, LO, HI)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

Adjusting wiper operation*

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.

Lower speed, fewer sweeps

Higher speed, more sweeps

Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

Wipers and Washers

NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

Models with intermittent time adjustment ring

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.

When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting ($\boxed{4}$) and the **LO** setting become the same.

If the wiper stops operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place. Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF, then remove the obstacle.

*1: Models with manual intermittent operation

*2: Models with automatic intermittent operation

* Not available on all models

Automatic Intermittent Wipers*



When you push the lever down to **AUTO**, the windscreen wipers sweep once, and go into the automatic mode.

The wipers operate intermittently, at low speed, or at high speed and stops in accordance with the amount of rainfall the rainfall sensor detects.

■ AUTO sensitivity adjustment

When the wiper function is set to **AUTO**, you can adjust the sensitivity of the rain fall sensor (using the adjustment ring) so that wipers will operate in accordance with your preference.

Sensor sensitivity



Low Sensitivity

High Sensitivity

≫Wipers and Washers

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

➢Automatic Intermittent Wipers[∗]

The rainfall sensor is in the location shown below.



NOTICE

AUTO should always be turned **OFF** before the following situations in order to prevent severe damage to the wiper system:

- Cleaning the windscreen
- Driving through a car wash
- No rain present

Rear Wiper/Washer



The rear wiper and washer can be used when the power mode is in ON.

■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON) Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

■ Washer () Sprays while you rotate the switch to this position. Hold it to activate the wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, it stops operating after a few more sweeps.

Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to \mathbb{R} with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

Front Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
INT * (Intermittent) AUTO * (Intermittent)	Intermittent
LO (Low speed wipe) HI (High speed wipe)	Continuous

Headlight Washers*



Turn the headlights on and press the headlight washer button to operate. The headlight washers also operate when you turn the windscreen washers for the first time after the power mode is in ON.

➢Headlight Washers[∗]

The headlight washers use the same fluid reservoir as the windscreen washers.

Brightness Control

Adjusting the Instrument Panel Brightness



When the brightness of the meter is reduced, you can use the (2) (TRIP) knob to adjust instrument panel brightness. Brighten: Turn the knob to the right. Dim: Turn the knob to the left.

Several seconds after you have adjusted the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.

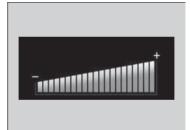
Brightness Control

Instrument panel brightness varies, depending on whether the exterior lights are on or off. The instrument panel dims to reduce glare when they are on.

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when:

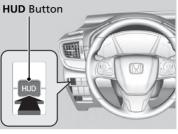
- The power mode is in ON.
- The light switch is in any position other than off and it is dark outside.

To cancels the reduced instrument panel brightness when the exterior lights are on, turn the knob to the right until the brightness display is up to max.



Adjusting the Head-up Display Brightness*





You can operate the head-up display to press the **HUD** button for about one second when the power mode is in ON.

▲ Button Button



When the head-up display is on, press and hold the **HUD** button until its brightness level indicator on the driver information interface. **Brighten:** Press the **b**utton. **Dim:** Press the **V** button.

The driver information interface will return to its original state several seconds after you adjust the brightness.

Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the driver information interface while you are adjusting it.

Adjusting the Head-up Display Brightness*

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button

Press the rear demister and heated door mirror button to defog the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.



The rear demister and heated door mirror automatically switches off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

≥Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror Button

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demister or deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long time when the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

Heated Windscreen Button*



Press the heated windscreen button to deice the windscreen when the power mode is in ON.

➢Heated Windscreen Button*

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been deiced. Also, do not use the system for a long period when the power system is stopped. This may weaken the 12-volt battery, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

Driving Position Memory System*

You can store two driver's seat positions (except for power lumbar) with the driving position memory system.

When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote transmitter or the keyless access system, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.



Driving Position Memory System*

Using the audio/information screen, you can disable the automatic seat adjustment function.

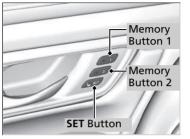
Customized Features P. 400

System Operation

The system will not operate if:

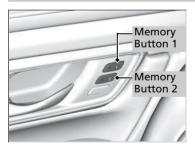
- Either seat position button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- Either memory position button is pressed while the seat is in motion.
- The vehicle speed is above 3 km/h (2 mph).
- Overload to the seat motor.

Storing a Position in Memory



- **1.** Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
- 2. Press the SET button.
 - The memory button indicator light will blink.
- **3.** Press and hold memory button 1 or 2 within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
 - Once the seat position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on.

Recalling the Stored Position



- **1.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- **2.** Press a memory button (1 or 2).
- The indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, the indicator light stays on.

Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be cancelled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the doublebeep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

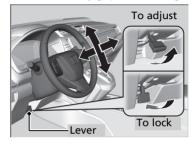
➢Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button, or a memory button (1 or 2).
- Adjust the seat position.
- Put the transmission into a position other than **P**.

Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



- **1.** Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
- The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
- **2.** Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
 - Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
- **3.** Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
 - After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

➢Adjusting the Steering Wheel

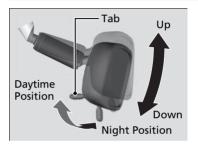
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

Interior Rearview Mirror

Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions*



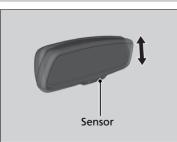
Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

■Adjusting the Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

Adjust the mirrors before you start driving. **▶** Front Seats P. 248

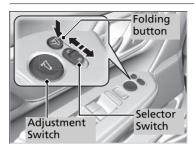
Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you, based in inputs from the mirror sensor. This feature is always active. Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in $[\mathbf{R}]$.

Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

Mirror position adjustment

L/R selector switch: Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

Mirror position adjustment switch: Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

Folding door mirrors

Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.

Reverse Tilt Door Mirror*



If activated, the passenger side door mirror automatically tilts downward when you put the transmission into $[\mathbf{R}]$; this improves close-in visibility on the passenger side of the vehicle when backing up. The mirror automatically returns to its original position when you take the transmission out of $[\mathbf{R}]$.

To activate this feature, set the power mode to ON, and slide the selector switch to the passenger's side.

Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the remote transmitter twice within 10 seconds, and hold it.

► You can release the button once the mirrors start folding in automatically. Touch the door lock button on either front door or the tailgate twice within 10 seconds.

► The mirrors start folding in automatically.

Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the remote transmitter. Open the driver's door.

► The mirrors start folding out automatically.

Grab the door handle on either front door and unlock all doors. Open the driver's door.

► The mirrors start folding out automatically.

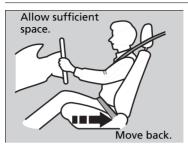
Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function*

You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

Adjusting the Seats

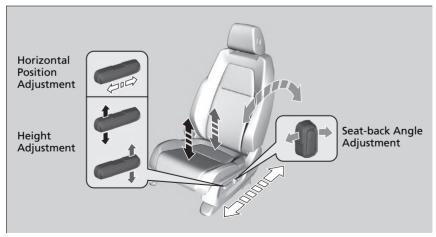
Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

Adjusting the Seat Positions

Adjusting the front power seat*



➢Adjusting the Seats

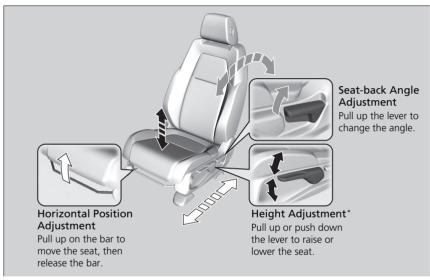
Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*



➢Adjusting the front manual seat(s)*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch



Lumbar Support Adjustment Switch*

Models with front power seat

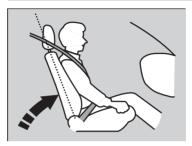
Press the top: To move the lumbar support up. Press the bottom: To move the lumbar support down.

Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support. **Press the rear:** To decrease the entire lumbar support.

Models with front manual seat Press the front: To increase the entire lumbar support. Press the rear: To decrease the entire lumbar

support.

Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

➢Adjusting the Seat-Backs

Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.

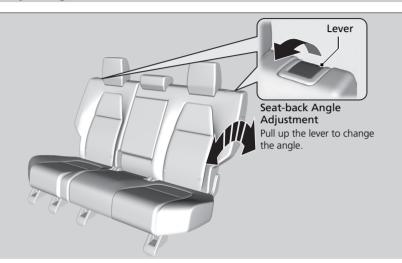
Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

Rear Seats

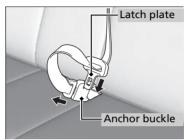
Adjusting the Seat Positions

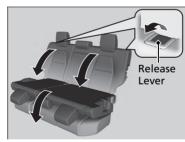


≫Rear Seats

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

Folding Down the Rear Seats







- **1.** Store the centre seat belt first. Insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
- **2.** Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.

Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor P. 57

3. Lower the rear seat head restraint to its lowest position. Put the armrest back into the seat-back.

From the rear seat side

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

From the luggage area side

4. Pull the release lever and fold down the seat.

➢Folding Down the Rear Seats

Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.

The rear seat-backs can be folded down to accommodate bulkier items in the luggage area.

Never drive with the seat-back folded down and the tailgate open.

Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 96

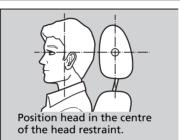
When returning the seat-back to its original position, push it firmly back. Also, make sure all rear shoulder belts are positioned in front of the seat-back.

Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending through the opening into the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

Adjusting the Front Head Restraints



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rearimpact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward. To lower the head restraint: Push it down while pressing the release button. Majusting the Front Head Restraints

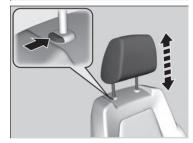
Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

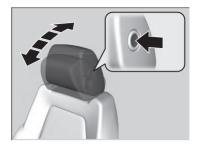
Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.







To tilt the head restraint forward: Push the back of it forward. To tilt the head restraint backward: Push it backward while pressing the release button on the side of the head restraint.

Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position

When you use the head restraint in the rear centre seating position, pull up the head restraint to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.



Changing the Rear Seat Head Restraint Position



A passenger sitting in the rear seat seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

To raise the head restraint: Pull it upward.

To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

To remove a head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

≥ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the power system is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

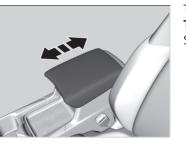
Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

Armrest

Using the Front Seat Armrest



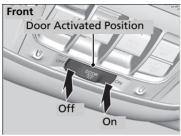
The console lid can be used as an armrest. **To adjust:** Slide the armrest to a desired position.

Using the Rear Seat Armrest

Pull down the armrest in the centre seat-back.

Interior Lights

Interior Light Switches





ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

➢Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

Models with colour audio system

Customized Features P. 161

- Models with Display Audio
 - Customized Features P. 400

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the power system is off.

If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

Map Lights



Front seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the $\overline{\&r}$ (map light) button.

Map Lights

Models with Panoramic Roof

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and a door is opened or interior light switch is in the **ON** position, the rear map light will not go off when you press the \overline{m} (map light) button.



Rear seat

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the $\overline{\&}$ (map light) button.

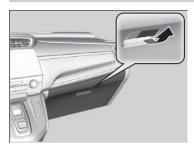
Luggage Area Lights



The lights come on when you open the tailgate.

Interior Convenience Items

Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

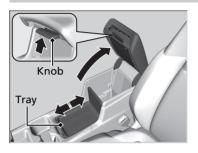
➢Glove Box

AWARNING

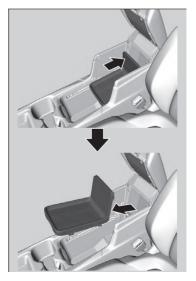
An open glove box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box closed while driving.

Centre Console Box

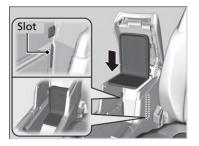


To open, pull the knob. You can change the position of the tray by sliding it forward or back.



Removing the tray1. Slide the tray back.

2. Lift the edge of the tray up slightly, then pull it out.



Storing the tray:

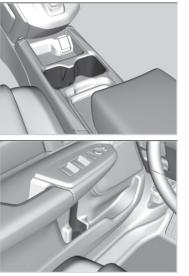
Line the tray up with the slots located at the rear section of the console box, and then push it down all the way until it is in the locked position.

Luggage Floor Box



Pull up the luggage area lower floor lid.

Beverage Holders



Front seat beverage holders

Are located in the console between the front seats.

Front door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of front door side pockets.



Rear seat beverage holders

Fold the armrest down to use the rear seat beverage holders.

Beverage Holders

NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



Rear door side beverage holders

Are located on the both of rear door side pockets.

Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



Console panel Open the cover to use it.

Accessory Power Sockets

NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

To prevent 12-volt battery drain, only use the power socket with the power system on.



Console compartment Open the cover to use it.



Luggage area

Open the cover to use it.

Coat Hook



There are coat hooks on the rear left and right grab handles. Pull it down to use it.

➢Coat Hook

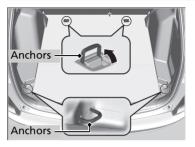
The coat hooks are not designed for large or heavy items.



There are coat hooks on the left and right door pillars.

Controls

Tie-down Anchors



The tie-down anchors on the luggage area floor can be used to install a net for securing items.

∑Tie-down Anchors

Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Luggage Hook

Hook

The luggage hook in the luggage area can be used to hang a light items.

■Luggage Hook

NOTICE

Do not hang a large object or an object that weighs more than 3 kg on the side luggage hook. Hanging heavy or large objects may damage the hook.

Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, press and release the indent. To close, press it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.

Conversation mirror*

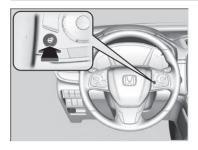
The sunglasses holder comes with a mirror. Open the sunglasses holder fully, then push it back to the first detent.

You can use the mirror to view the rear seats.

Sunglasses Holder

Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

Heated Steering Wheel*



The power mode must be in ON to use the heated steering wheel.

Press the button on the right side of the steering wheel.

When a comfortable temperature is reached, press the button again to turn it off.

The heated steering wheel is turned off every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

➢Heated Steering Wheel*

Do not use the heated steering wheel continuously when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12-volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

Front Seat Heaters*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.

Press the seat heater button:

Once - The HI setting (three indicators on) Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on) Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on) Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

When the power mode is in ON after it is turned off, the previous setting of seat heaters is maintained.

➢Front Seat Heaters *

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.



Rear Seat Heaters*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.

There is no heater in the rear centre seating position.

Press the seat heater button:

Once - The HI setting (three indicators on) Twice - The MID setting (two indicators on) Three times - The LO setting (one indicator on) Four times - The OFF setting (no indicators on)

≫Rear Seat Heaters*

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in LO when the power system is off. Under such conditions, the 12volt battery may be weakened, making it difficult to turn the power system on.

After a certain period of time, the strength setting for the seat heater will automatically be reduced by one level at a time until the seat heater shuts off. The elapsed time varies according to the interior environment.

Luggage Area Cover



The luggage area cover can be used to conceal items in the luggage area and protect them from direct sunlight.

To extend:

Slightly lift up on the handle at the centre edge of the cover to unhook each end, then pull the cover rearward and clip the mounting rods in the hooks at both sides of the tailgate opening.

Luggage Area Cover

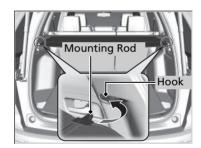
Do not let anyone access items in the luggage area while driving. Loose items can cause injury if you have to brake hard.

Do not stack objects higher than the top of the seat in the luggage area. They could block your view and be thrown about the vehicle during a sudden stop.

To prevent luggage area cover damage:

- Do not place items on the luggage area cover.
- Do not put weight on the luggage area cover.

Be sure that each mounting rod sets in its respective retention groove when you retract the rear luggage cover. If they are not set in the grooves, the rods may rattle as they contact the surrounding surfaces.





To retract:

Slip the rods out of the hooks, then slowly roll it back until it is completely retracted.

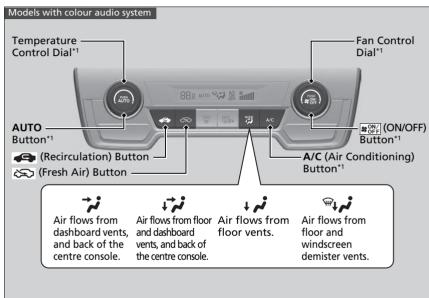


To remove:

Push either end of the housing inward, then lift it out of its position.

Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.



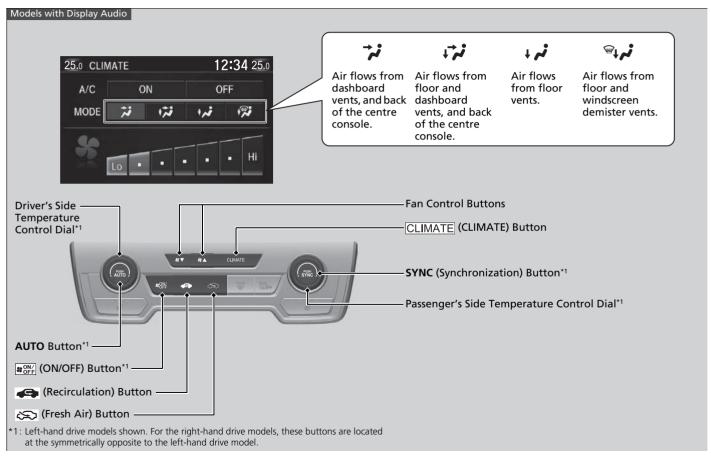
*1: Left-hand drive models shown. For the right-hand drive models, these buttons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the left-hand drive model.

≥Using Automatic Climate Control

Models with Display Audio

Press the **CLIMATE** button to display A/C, MODE, fan control information on the audio/information screen to operate manually. Select icon to turn on or off A/C, change the vent mode, or change the fan speed.

If any buttons are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.



Use the system when the power system is on.

1. Press the AUTO button.

Models with colour audio system

2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control dial.

Models with Display Audio

- **2.** Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side or passenger's side control dial.
- **3.** Press the $\Re_{OFF}^{ON/}$ (on/off) button to cancel.

Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes

Press the event (recirculation) or event (fresh air) button to switch the mode depending on environmental conditions.

Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator on): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

➢Using Automatic Climate Control

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button that were pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on AUTO, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

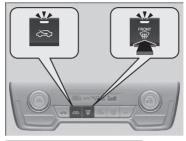
When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Pressing the $[\mathfrak{s}_{0}^{\mathsf{M}}]$ button switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

Models with colour audio system



Models with Display Audio



Pressing the real (windscreen demister) button turns the air conditioning system on and automatically switches the system to fresh air mode.

Press the \boxed{m} button again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.

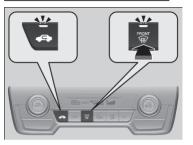
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

If the side windows fog up, adjust the vents so that the air hits the side windows.

■ To rapidly defrost the windows

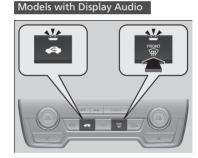
Models with colour audio system



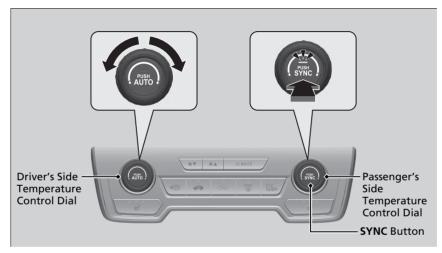
- **1.** Press the state button (indicator on).
- **2.** Press the **e** button (indicator on).

➢To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.



Synchronization Mode*



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

- 1. Press the SYNC button.
 - ► The system switches to synchronization mode.
- 2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control dial.

Press the **SYNC** button to return to dual mode.

Synchronization Mode*

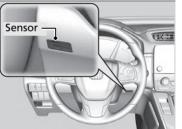
When you press the $[\begin{tabular}{c} \end{tabular}$ button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in synchronization mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can not be set separately.

Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

Audio System

About Your Audio System	286	
USB Port(s)	287	
HDMI™ Port*	288	
Auxiliary Input Jack*	288	
Audio System Theft Protection	289	
Audio Remote Controls	290	
Audio System Basic Operation 29	3 , 319	
Audio Error Messages	385	
General Information on the Audio		
System	387	
Customized Features	2,400	

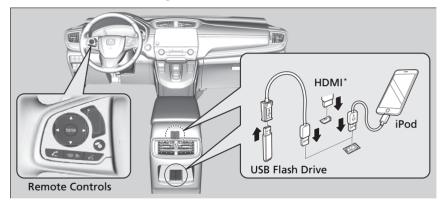
Hands-Free Telephone System428, 449 Emergency Call (eCall)*

Automatic emergency call	480
Manual emergency call	482

About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone, *Bluetooth*[®], and HDMI[™] devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and switches on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface^{*}.



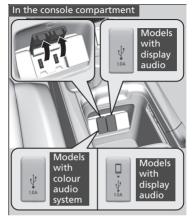
➢About Your Audio System

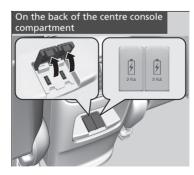
iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

Key Off Operation

After you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, you can use the audio system for up to 30 minutes per driving cycle. However, whether you can continue using the audio system depends on the battery condition. Repeatedly using this feature may drain the battery.

USB Port(s)





Install the iPod USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.

The USB port (1.0A) is for playing audio files on a USB flash drive, connecting a mobile phone, and charging devices.

Models with Display Audio

- The USB port (1.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with smartphone connection, Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.
- To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.

On the back of the centre console compartment*

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

≥USB Port(s)

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

If the audio system does not recognise the iPod, try reconnecting it a few times or reboot the device. To reboot, follow the manufacturer's instructions provided with the iPod or visit *www.apple.com/ipod*.

The USB port can supply up to 1.0A/1.5A/2.5A of power. It does not output 1.0A/1.5A/2.5A unless the device requests.

For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON first.

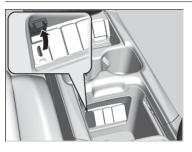
USB Port (2.5A)

This port is for battery charge only. You cannot play music even if you have connected a music player to it.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

* Not available on all models

HDMI[™] Port*



- **1.** Open the cover.
- 2. Install the HDMI[™] cable to the HDMI[™] port.

>>HDMI™ Port*

- Do not leave the HDMI[™] connected device in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

The terms HDMI and HDMI High-Definition Multimedia Interface, and the HDMI Logo are trademarks or registered trademarks of HDMI Licensing LLC in the United States and other countries.

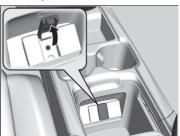
Auxiliary Input Jack*

To switch the mode, press any of the audio mode buttons. You can return to AUX mode by pressing the **MEDIA** button.

You cannot use the auxiliary input jack if you replace the audio system.

Auxiliary Input Jack*

Use the jack to connect devices.



- 1. Open the cover.
- **2.** Connect a device to the input jack using a 3.5 mm stereo miniplug.
 - The audio system automatically switches to the AUX mode.

Audio System Theft Protection

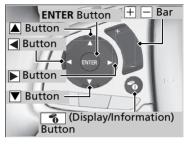
The audio system is disabled when it is disconnected from the power source, such as when the battery is disconnected or goes dead. In certain conditions, the system may display a code entry screen. If this occurs, reactivate the audio system.

Reactivating the audio system

- **1.** Set the power mode to ON.
- 2. Turn on the audio system.
- 3. Press and hold the audio system power button for more than two seconds.
 - ► The audio system is reactivated when the audio control unit establishes a connection with the vehicle control unit. If the control unit fails to recognise the audio unit, you must go to a dealer and have the audio unit checked.

Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.



▲ ▼ Buttons

Press \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to cycle through the audio mode as follows:

Models with colour audio system

 $\label{eq:FM1} \begin{array}{l} FM1 \longrightarrow FM2 \longrightarrow DAB1 \longrightarrow DAB2 \longrightarrow LW \longrightarrow MW \longrightarrow \\ USB/iPod \longrightarrow Bluetooth^{\circledast} \ Audio \longrightarrow AUX \end{array}$

Models with Display Audio

FM→DAB→LW→MW→USB→iPod→ Bluetooth® Audio→Apps→Audio Apps→ AUX-HDMI[™]

➢Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

Depending on the *Bluetooth*[®] device you connect, some functions may not be available.

Press the 🖻 🛨 (Hang-up/back) button^{*} to go back to the previous command or cancel a command.

Press the **(**Display/information) button to switch display.

Switching the Display P. 320

Features

Models with Display Audio

ENTER Button

- When listening to the radio
- **1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to switch the display to a preset list you stored in the preset buttons.
- 2. Press A or T to select a preset, then press ENTER.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
- **1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the folder list.
- **2.** Press \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to select a folder.
- 3. Press ENTER to display a list of tracks in that folder.
- **4.** Press ▲ or ▼ to select a track, then press **ENTER**.

- When listening to an iPod
- **1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the iPod music list.
- **2.** Press \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to select a category.
- 3. Press ENTER to display a list of items in the category.
- **4.** Press \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to select an item, then press **ENTER**.
 - ▶ Press **ENTER** and press ▲ or ▼ repeatedly until the desired mode you want to listen to is displayed.
- When listening to Bluetooth® Audio
- **1.** From the audio screen in the driver information interface, press **ENTER** to display the track list.
- **2.** Press \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown to select a track, then press **ENTER**.
- + (Volume) Bar

Press +: To increase the volume.

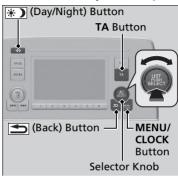
Press —: To decrease the volume.

Buttons

- When listening to the radio **Press** To select the next preset radio station. **Press** To select the previous preset radio station. **Press and hold :** To select the next strong station. **Press and hold T** o select the previous strong station. • When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or Bluetooth® Audio **Press** To skip to the next song. **Press T** ogo back to the beginning of the current or previous song. • When listening to a USB flash drive
 - **Press and hold :** To skip to the next folder.
 - **Press and hold T**: To go back to the previous folder.

Models with colour audio system

To use the audio system, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



Use the selector knob or **MENU/CLOCK** button to access some audio functions.

Press ö to switch between the normal and extended display for some functions.

Selector knob: Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices. Press $\stackrel{\scriptstyle{\frown}}{\scriptstyle{\circlearrowright}}$ to set your selection.

Mudio System Basic Operation

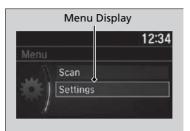
These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob. Rotate \bigcirc to select. Press $\stackrel{\odot}{\rightrightarrows}$ to enter.

Menu Items

Adjust Clock P. 180
 Wallpaper Setup P. 297
 Display Setup P. 300
 Scan P. 306, 308, 315
 Play Mode P. 312, 315
 RDS Settings P. 302
 DAB Settings P. 308
 Bluetooth P. 316

Press the buttons on the steering wheel to change any audio setting.

Audio Remote Controls P. 290



MENU/CLOCK button: Press to select any mode.

The available modes include the wallpaper, display, clock, language setup, and play modes. Play mode choices include scan, random, repeat, and so on.

(Back) button: Press to go back to the previous display.

TA button: Press to activate the TA station

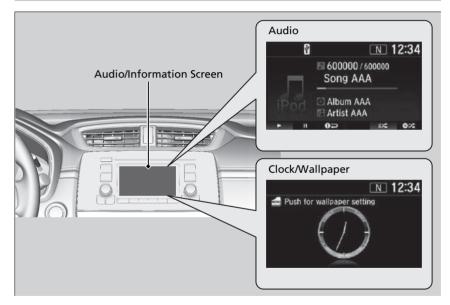
(Day/Night) button: Press to change the audio/information screen brightness.

- Press the * button, then adjust the brightness using $\textcircled{\circ}$.
 - Each time you press the 🔆 Dutton, the mode switches between the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this screen, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display



Audio

Shows the current audio information.

Clock/Wallpaper

Shows a clock screen or an image you import.

Change display

- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- 3. Rotate 🗇 to select Display change, then press 🕹.
- **4.** Rotate 🗇 to select **Wallpaper**, then press 🕹.
 - ▶ If you want to return to the audio/information screen, select Audio.

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

Import wallpaper

You can import up to three images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.

USB Port(s) P. 287

- 2. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **4.** Rotate [™] to select **Wallpaper**, then press [™] .
- **5.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Import**, then press \bigotimes .
- ► The picture name is displayed on the list.
- **6.** Rotate '[©]' to select a desired picture, then press [©].
 - ▶ The selected picture is displayed.
- **7.** Press 🕹 to save the picture.
- 8. Press 🕹 to select OK.
- 9. Rotate 🗇 to select a location to save the picture, then press હ.
 - The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

≫Wallpaper Setup

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 x 936 pixels. If the image size is less than 480 x 234 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- Up to 255 files can be selected.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the error message appears.
- The wallpaper setup is limited while driving.

Select wallpaper

- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- 3. Rotate 🗇 to select Wallpaper, then press 🕹.
- **4.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Select**, then press \bigotimes .
 - ► The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
- 5. Rotate 🗇 to select a desired wallpaper, then press 🕹.

To view wallpaper once it is set

- 1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- 3. Rotate 😙 to select Display change, then press 🕹.
- **4.** Rotate "[¬] to select **Wallpaper**, then press [¬] .
- 5. Press the (Back) button until the top screen is displayed.

Delete wallpaper

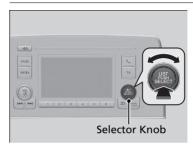
- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- **3.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Wallpaper**, then press \bigotimes .
- **4.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Delete**, then press \circlearrowright .
 - The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
- **5.** Rotate \bigcirc to select a wallpaper that you want to delete, then press \circlearrowright .
- **6.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Yes**, then press \bigotimes .
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper setting screen.

≫Wallpaper Setup

To go back to the previous screen, press the (Back) button.

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

Adjusting the Sound

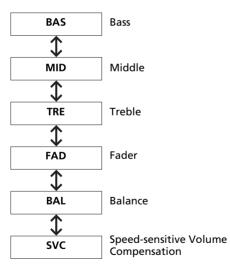


Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button and rotate or to select **Sound**, then press 3. Rotate or to scroll through the following choices:

Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off, Low, Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

		12:3
Sound		
Ĩ.	BAS	-00000100000+
.D/#1	MID	-101010000000+
	TRE	



Rotate $\ensuremath{\,\overline{\bigcirc}\,}$ to adjust the sound setting, then press $\ensuremath{\,\overline{\bigcirc}\,}$.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness

	12:34
Dis	
1	
	Brightness -
	Contrast - +

- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- 3. Rotate ⁽[™]) to select **Display adjustment**, then press ^{(™}).
- 5. Rotate "[™] to adjust the setting, then press [™] .

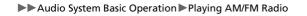
Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

		12:34
Colou	ir theme	
5	Blue	
	Red	
	Amber	

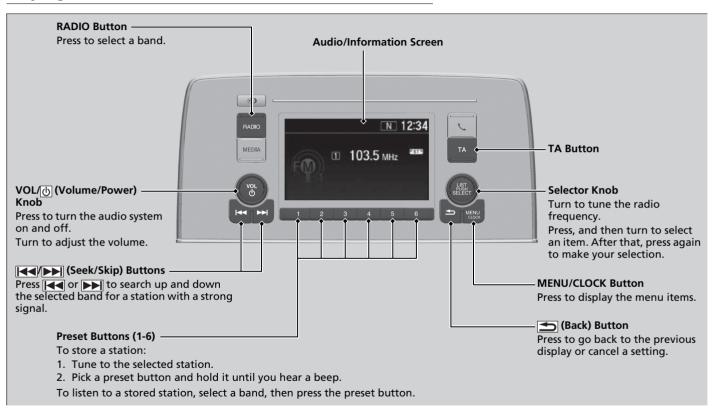
- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- 2. Rotate ⁽[¬]) to select **Settings**, then press ⁽_⊘).
- 3. Rotate ⁽⑦⁺ to select **Colour theme**, then press ⁽⊗).
- 4. Rotate ⑦ to select the setting you want, then press ፩.

Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black level** settings in the same manner.



Playing AM/FM Radio



FM mode

Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides convenient automated services related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Press ♂ while listening to an FM station. **2.** Rotate ⑦ to select the station, then press ♂.

Update List

Updates your available station list at any time.
1. Press while listening to an FM station.
2. Rotate to select Update list, then press .

Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

- 1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- 2. Rotate 🗇 to select Settings, then press 🕹.
- 3. Rotate 🗇 to select RDS settings, then press 🕹.
- 4. Rotate 😙 to select Radio text, then press 🕹.
 - Select **Radio text** again to turn it off.

➢Playing AM/FM Radio

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations into the preset button memory. AM has two types of frequencies LW and MW, and each lets you store six stations. FM1 and FM2 let you store six stations each.

Switching the Audio Mode Press the audio source selecting buttons on the steering wheel.

Audio Remote Controls P. 290

➢Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Turning the Alternative Frequency (AF) function on and off turns the RDS on and off.

Alternative Frequency (AF)

Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.

- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- **3.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **RDS settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- **4.** Rotate "[¬] to select **AF**, then press [→].
 - Select **AF** again to turn it off.

Regional Programme (REG)

Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.

- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- 3. Rotate 🗇 to select RDS settings, then press 🕹.
- **4.** Rotate "[¬] to select **REG**, then press [→].
 - Select **REG** again to turn it off.

Except AM/FM/DAB mode

News Programme (News)

Automatically tunes to the news programme.

- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- **2.** Rotate 🗇 to select **Settings**, then press 🕹.
- 3. Rotate 👘 to select RDS settings, then press 🕹.
- 4. Rotate 🗇 to select News, then press 🕹.
 - Select News again to turn it off.

➢Radio Data System (RDS)

If the system cannot find any station on **Station list**, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate to select **Yes**, then press to update the list.

■ Traffic announcement (TA) button

TA standby function allows the system to stand by for traffic announcements in any mode. The last tuned station must be an RDS-capable traffic programme station.

To turn the function on: Press the **TA** button. When a traffic announcement begins on your last tuned station, the system automatically switches to the FM mode. TA-INFO appears on the display. The system returns to your last selected mode after the traffic announcement is finished.

If you want to go back to your last selected mode during the traffic announcement, press the **TA** button again.

To cancel the function: Press the TA button.

≥Radio Data System (RDS)

ТΑ

When you press the **TA** button, the **TA** indicator appears on the display.

If you select **Scan** while the TA standby function is on, the system searches TP station only.

Pressing the **TA** button while the traffic announcement is on does not cancel the TA standby function.

Except AM/FM/DAB mode

Programme type (PTY)/News interrupt function

Allows the system to interrupt with a newscast in any mode. The last tuned station must be the NEWS PTY coded station.

To activate the function: Select **News** from **RDS settings** and display the NEWS PTY before changing to other modes. When a newscast begins on your last tuned station, the system automatically switches to the FM mode.

News Programme (News) P. 303

The system returns to your last selected mode if changed to another programme, or signal gets weak.

PTY alarm

The PTY code, ALARM is used for emergency announcements, such as natural disasters. When this code is received, ALARM appears on the display and the system interrupts your audio operation.

AM (LW/MW) mode

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band. **1.** Press $\ensuremath{\textcircled{S}}$ while listening to an AM station.

2. Rotate \bigcirc to select the station, then press \circlearrowright .

Update List

Updates your available station list at any time. **1.** Press ☺ while listening to an AM station. **2.** Rotate ۞ to select **Update list**, then press ☺.

🖉 Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. **1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

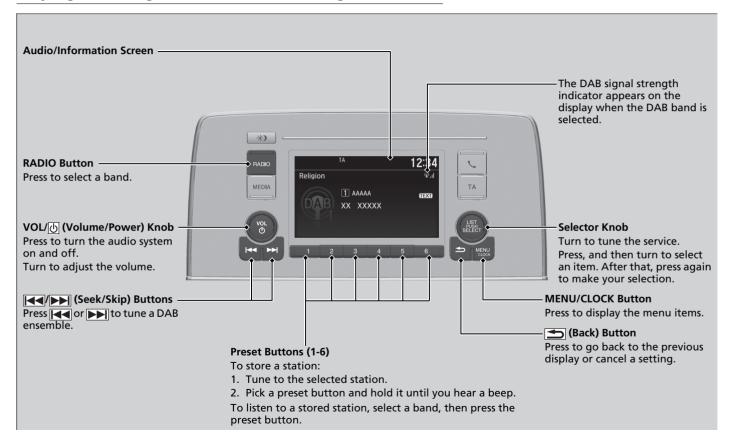
2. Rotate \bigcirc to select **Scan**, then press \bigotimes .

To turn off scan, press 🖉.

Station List

If the system cannot find any station on **Station list**, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate \bigcirc to select **Yes**, then press to update the list.

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)



Service List and Ensemble List

■ To find an DAB station from Service List or Ensemble List

- To find a DAB station from the service list:
- **1.** Press 🕹 while selecting the DAB mode.
- 2. Rotate 🗇 to select the station, then press 🖉.
 - ▶ If you select **Update list**, the system update the station list.

To find a DAB station from the ensemble list:

- **1.** Press 🕹 while selecting the DAB mode.
- 2. Rotate 🗇 to select Ensemble list, then press 🕹.
- **3.** Rotate \bigcirc to select the ensemble, then press \bigotimes .
 - ▶ If you select **Update list**, the system update the ensemble list.

Scan

To turn off scan, press &.

Radio Text:

Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

- 1. Press the MENU/CLOCK button.
- 2. Rotate 🗇 to select Settings, then press 🕹.
- 3. Rotate 🗇 to select DAB settings, then press 🕹.
- **4.** Rotate "[¬][¬] to select **Radio text**, then press [→]_⇒.
 - Select **Radio text** again to turn it off.

Service List and Ensemble List

You can store 12 DAB stations into the preset button memory. DAB1 and DAB2 let you store 6 stations each.

Switching the Audio Mode Press the audio source selecting buttons on the steering wheel.

Audio Remote Controls P. 290

If the system cannot find a station, a confirmation message for updating the list appears. Rotate \bigcirc to select **Yes**, then press to update the list.

■Radio Text:

The **TEXT** indicator appears on the display indicating radio text information.

DAB-Link:

Automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.

- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- 3. Rotate 🗇 to select DAB settings, then press 🕹
- **4.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **DAB-Link**, then press \bigotimes .
 - Select **DAB-Link** again to turn it off.

FM-Link:

If the system finds the same station from an FM band, it automatically switches the band.

- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- **3.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **DAB settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- **4.** Rotate "[¬] to select **FM-Link**, then press [¬].
 - Select **FM-Link** again to turn it off.

Band select:

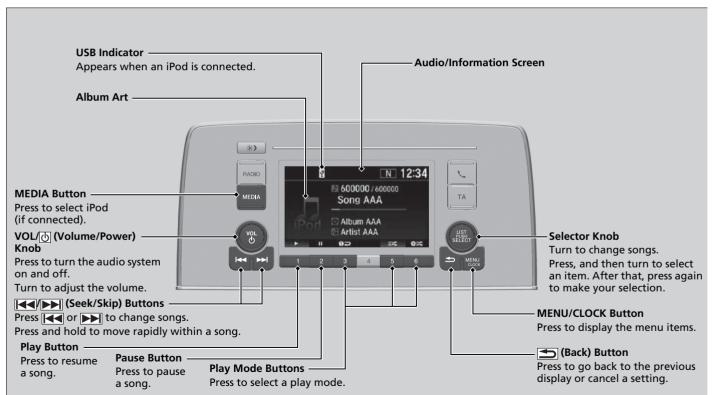
You can select specific bands. This can reduces the time to update the lists, and search for a station.

- 1. Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Settings**, then press \bigotimes .
- 3. Rotate 🗇 to select DAB settings, then press 🕹.
- 4. Rotate 👘 to select **Band select**, then press 🖉.
- 5. Rotate 🗇 to select Both, BandIII or L-Band, then press 🕹.

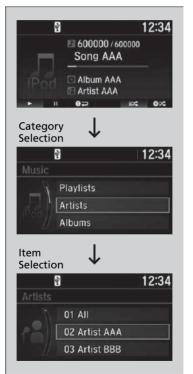
Playing an iPod

Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then press the **MEDIA** button.

DSB Port(s) P. 287



How to Select a Song from the iPod Music List with the Selector Knob



1. Press 🕹 to display the iPod music list.

2. Rotate 🗇 to select a category.

- 3. Press ☺ to display a list of items in the category.
- **4.** Rotate \bigcirc to select an item, then press \bigotimes .
 - Press S and rotate r repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

➢Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

➢ iPod/USB Flash Drive P. 385

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and shuffle modes when playing a song.



Available mode icons appear above the play mode buttons. Press the button corresponding to the mode you want to select.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle albums: Plays all available albums in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

Shuffle all: Plays all available songs in a selected category (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, podcasts, audiobooks, and composers) in random order.

Repeat one track: Repeats the current song.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

Rotate ⓒ to select **Play mode**, then press $rac{a}$. Rotate ⓒ to select a mode, then press $rac{a}$. To turn it off, rotate ⓒ to select **Normal play**, then press $rac{a}$.

To turn off a play mode Press the selected button.

Features

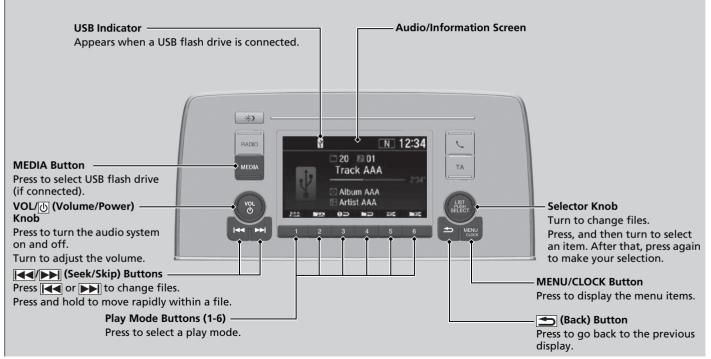
Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, $WAA = AAC^{+1}$ or WAV format

WMA, AAC^{*1} or WAV format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then press the $\ensuremath{\text{MEDIA}}$ button.

DSB Port(s) P. 287



*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

How to Select a File from	m a Folder with the Selector Knob	Playing a USB Flash Drive	
20 01 Track AAA 234 Album AAA Artist AAA Artist AAA 0 0 00 02 00 04	1. Press to display a folder list.	 Use the recommended USB flash drives. General Information on the Audio System P. 387 Files in WMA format protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played. The audio system displays Unplayable file, and then skips to the next file. 	
Folder Selection 12:34 Folder list 01 Folder 01 02 Folder 02 03 Folder 03	2. Rotate 🔊 to select a folder.	If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.	
Track Selection 12:34 Track list 01 File AAA 02 File BBB 03 File CCC	 3. Press to display a list of files in that folder. 4. Rotate to select a file, then press to select. 		

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat, random, and scan modes when playing a file.

mode buttons.

you want to select.

Available mode icons appear above the play

Press the button corresponding to the mode



To turn off a play mode

Press the selected button.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Repeat

Repeat one folder: Repeats all files in the current folder.

O Repeat one track: Repeats the current file.

Random

EXAMPLE : Random in folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random all: Plays all files in random order.

Scan

Scan folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

You can also select a play mode by pressing the **MENU/CLOCK** button.

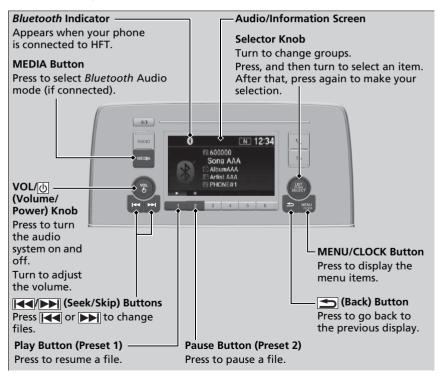
Rotate 🗇 to select **Play mode**, then press ö. Rotate 🗇 to select a mode, then press ö. To turn it off, rotate 🌍 to select **Normal play**, then press ö.

Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 434



≥Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible with the system. For a list of compatible phones, ask a dealer.

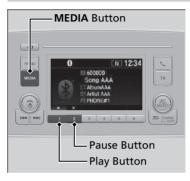
Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there will be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

To Play *Bluetooth*[®] Audio Files



- **1.** Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to HFT.
- 2. Press the **MEDIA** button until the *Bluetooth*[®] Audio mode is selected.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFTcompatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*[®] Audio, may already be connected.

To Play Bluetooth® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

The pause function may not be available on some phones.

If any audio device is connected to the auxiliary input jack or USB port, you may need to press the **MEDIA** button repeatedly to select the *Bluetooth®* Audio system.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

Features

To pause or resume a file

Press the Play or Pause button to select a mode.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

8 12:34 600000 Song AAA AlbumAAA Artist AAA PHONE#1 Category $\mathbf{1}$ Selection 12:34 8 01 Artists 02 Albums Item Selection 12:34 8 01 Recently Added 02 Artist AAA 03 Artist BBB

1. Press 🕹 to display the music search list.

2. Rotate 🗇 to select a category.

- 3. Press ঊ to display a list of items in the category.
- **4.** Rotate \bigcirc to select an item, then press \bigotimes .
 - Press S and rotate r repeatedly until a desired item you want to listen is displayed.

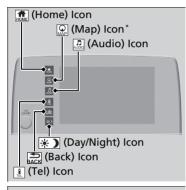
How to Select a Song from the Music Search List with the Selector Knob

Depending on the *Bluetooth*[®] device you connect, some or all of the categories may not be displayed.

Models with Display Audio

You can use the audio system for 30 minutes when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF, the system will then turn off automatically.

If you want to keep using it, we recommend that you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.



(Home): Select to go to the home screen.
 Switching the Display P. 320
 (Map)*: Select to display the map screen.

(Audio): Select to display the audio screen. (Tel): Select to display the phone screen. (Back): Select to go back to the previous screen when the icon is illuminated.

Mudio System Basic Operation

Audio Menu Items

- Station List P. 349, 350
- Music Search List P. 355, 363
- **Scan** P. 350, 364
- ▶ Play Mode P. 356, 364

When the battery has been reconnected or replaced, the next start-up may take a few minutes for the audio system to start. Wait a few moments while the system is starting up.

Key Off Operation About Your Audio System P. 286

	Navigation 🕢 🕽	Audio
(Phone 🖬	i info
	Settings 🏘	Smartphone Connection

(Day/Night): Select to change the audio/ information screen brightness.

Select * once and select - or + to make an adjustment.

Each time you select (*), the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

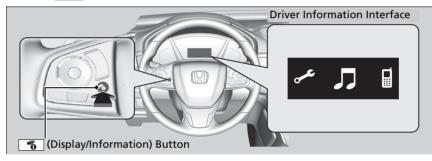
Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

Switching the Display

Using the 👘 (display/information) button

Press the (display/information) button to change the display.

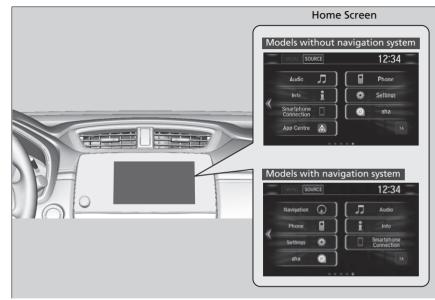


Using the 6 (display/information) button

You can edit, add, and delete the contents shown on the driver information interface.

Customizing the Meter P. 324

Using the audio/information screen



Select **f** to go to the home screen.

Select Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Navigation^{*}, Smartphone Connection (Apple CarPlay, Android Auto), aha, App Centre, TA, App List, or (instrument panel).

Phone

Displays the HFT information.

Hands-Free Telephone System P. 449

* Not available on all models

≥Using the audio/information screen

Touchscreen operation

- Use simple gestures including touching, swiping and scrolling to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped or use voice commands*.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.
- You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting. Customized Features P. 400

Info

Displays Trip Computer, Clock/wallpaper/Clock, or System/Device Information. Select MENU on the Info Menu screen to see all available options: Trip Computer, Voice Info*, Clock/wallpaper/Clock and System/device information.

Trip Computer:

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- History of Trip A tab: Displays information for the three previous drives. The information is stored every time you reset Trip A.
 To delete the history manually, select Delete history on the History of Trip A tab. The confirmation message appears on the screen, then select Yes.

Voice Info*: Displays a list of all voice commands.

Clock/wallpaper/Clock: Displays the clock and wallpaper.

System/device information:

- System Info: Displays the software version of the audio system.
- USB info: Displays the memory usage of the USB device.

Audio

Displays the current audio information.

Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

Customized Features P. 400

■ Navigation*

Displays the navigation screen.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Smartphone Connection

Connects with your smartphone^{*1} and allows some apps on your smartphone to be used on the audio system, and displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

Apple CarPlay P. 377
Android Auto P. 381

🔳 aha

Displays the Aha[™] screen. ▶ Playing Aha[™] P. 361

App Centre

Displays Honda App Centre. **On Board Apps** P. 369

TA 🗖

Turns on and off the traffic information.

App List

Adds or removes apps or widgets on the home screen. **D** Home Screen P. 330

(instrument panel)

Selects from three customizable settings for the driver information interface.

*1: Available on specific phones only. Ask a dealer for compatible phones for feature details.

* Not available on all models

Changing the Home Screen Icon Layout



- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select and hold an icon.
 - The screen switches to the customization screen.
- **3.** Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
- 4. Select OK.
 - The screen will return to the home screen.

Customizing the Meter

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents on the driver information interface.



- 1. 🟦
- 2. Settings
- 3. System
- 4. Configuration of Instrument Panel

Customizing the Meter

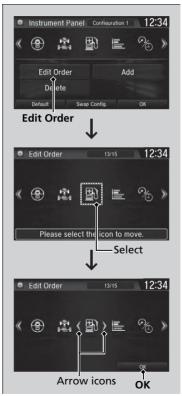
You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, select **Swap Config.**.

When you select **Swap Config.** during customization, the settings you changed will be saved.

When you select adving customization, the settings you changed will not be saved and you will be returned to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Editing order

To change the order of the icons on the driver information interface, first select:



1. Edit Order

- **2.** Select the icon you want to move.
 - You will see arrows on both sides of the selected icon.

- **3.** Select the left or right arrow repeatedly to move the icon to your desired position.
- 4. Select OK.
 - ► The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Editing order

You can use an alternative method to change the order of the icons. First select:

1. Edit Order

- 2. Select and hold the icon you want to move.
- 3. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.

4. Select **OK**.

The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Adding contents

You can add icons to the driver information interface. To add icons, first select: **1. Add**



- **2.** Select an icon you want to add.
 - You will see a plus mark on the upper right hand corner of the selected icon.

- 3. Select OK.
 - ► The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

➢Adding contents

Icons that are greyed out cannot be selected.

If an icon has a plus mark in the upper-right corner, it means that the icon has already been added.

Deleting contents

To delete contents on the driver information interface, first select:



1. Delete

- **2.** Select an icon you want to delete.
 - ► The icon with an X on the upper right hand corner can be deleted.

- 3. Select OK.
 - The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Deleting contents

- You can also delete contents by selecting:
- 1. Delete or Edit Order
- 2. Select and hold an icon you want to delete.
- 3. Drag and drop the icon to the trash icon.
- 4. Select OK.
- The screen will return to the **Instrument Panel** screen.

Wallpaper Setup

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

Import wallpaper

You can import up to five images, one at a time, for wallpaper from a USB flash drive.



- 1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port.
 - USB Port(s) P. 287
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Clock.
- Select Clock/Wallpaper Type, then open the Wallpaper tab.
- 5. Select Add New.
- ► The picture name is displayed on the list.
- 6. Select a desired picture.
 - The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
- 7. Select **Start Import** to save the data.
 - The display will return to the wallpaper list.

≫Wallpaper Setup

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock/Wallpaper Type** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be fewer than 64 characters.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- The individual file size limit is 5 MB.
- The maximum image size is 4,096 × 4,096 pixels. If the image size is less than 800 × 480 pixels, the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

- 1. Select 💼
- 2. Select «
- 3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 4. Select Change wallpaper.
- 5. Select Gallery, Live wallpapers, or Wallpapers.



Select wallpaper

- 1. Select Settings.
- 2. Select Clock.
- 3. Select Clock/Wallpaper Type, then open the Wallpaper tab.
 - ▶ The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
- 4. Select a desired wallpaper.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 5. Select Set.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

To view wallpaper once it is set

- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select Info.
- 3. Select MENU.
- 4. Select Clock/wallpaper.

Delete wallpaper

- 1. Select Settings.
- 2. Select Clock.
- 3. Select Clock/Wallpaper Type, then open the Wallpaper tab.
 - The screen changes to the wallpaper list.
- 4. Select a wallpaper that you want to delete.
 - ▶ The preview is displayed on the left side on the screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 5. Select Delete.
 - ► A confirmation message appears on the screen.
- 6. Select Yes to delete completely.
 - ▶ The display will return to the wallpaper list.

≫Wallpaper Setup

From the pop-up menu, select **Preview** to see a preview at full-size screen.



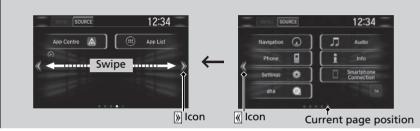
To go back to the previous screen, select $\mathbf{OK},$ or select \fbox{Ack}

When the file size is large, it takes a while to be previewed.

To delete all wallpapers you add, select $\ensuremath{\text{Delete}}\xspace$ All, then $\ensuremath{\text{Yes}}\xspace.$

Home Screen

To change to a next screen



Selecting $\overline{\langle\!\langle}$ or $\overline{\rangle\!\rangle}$, or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

➢Home Screen

The home screen has 5 pages (fixed). You cannot add any more pages.

Select for a go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

■ To use apps or widgets



- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select App List.

► The apps screen appears.

3. Select the app or widget you want to use.

Preinstall app list:

- Image (Browser): Displays the web browser utilized by smartphone and Wi-Fi connection.
- 📰 (Calculator): Displays Calculator.
- 🔄 (Gallery): Displays images.
- Image (Downloads): Displays the data downloaded from the web browser and so on.
- App installer): Check with a Honda dealer for apps that are available for installation.
- (Search): Displays various retrieval screen.

∑To use apps or widgets

Select and hold a selected app or widget to add that app's or widget's shortcut on the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

Defaulting All the Settings P. 427

If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

Defaulting All the Settings P. 427

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

There is a possibility that a browser is shut down in the situation of the use. In that situation, the screen will return to before the browser startup.

Do not install apps other than those confirmed by a Honda dealer. Installation of unauthorised apps may introduce data corruption risks to your vehicle's information and your privacy.

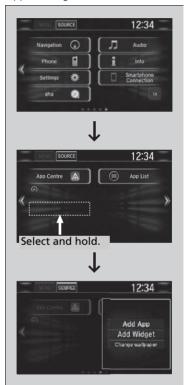
You can delete user installed apps by the following procedure.

- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the **Others** tab.
- 5. Select **Detailed Information**.
- 6. Select an App that you want to delete.
- 7. Select Delete.

Pre-installed apps cannot be deleted.

To add app or widget icons on the home screen

App or widget icons can be added on the home screen.



Select .
 Select .

- **3.** Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

- 4. Select Add App or Add Widget.
 - ► The apps/widget screen appears.



- **5.** Select and hold an app or widget icon you want to add.
 - ► The screen switches to the customization screen.

- **6.** Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
- 7. Select OK.
 - The screen will return to the home screen.

To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



- **1.** Select and hold an icon.
 - The screen switches to the customization screen.

- **2.** Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
- 3. Select OK.
 - ► The screen will return to the home screen.

\gg To move icons on the home screen

You can also move the **Phone**, **Info**, **Audio**, **Settings**, **Navigation**^{*}, **Smartphone Connection**, **aha**, **App Centre**, **TA**, **App List**, and 😭 (instrument panel) icons in the same manner.

■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



- **1.** Select and hold an icon.
- The screen switches to the customization screen.

To remove icons on the home screen

You cannot delete the Phone, Info, Audio, Settings, Navigation^{*}, Smartphone Connection, aha, App Centre, TA, App List, and (instrument panel) icons.

Apps or widgets will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

- **2.** Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the trash icon.
 - The icon is removed from the home screen.
- 3. Select OK.
 - The screen will return to the home screen.

■ To change the home screen wallpaper

You can change a wallpaper of the home screen.

12:34

12:34



R

- **1.** Select and hold empty space on the home screen.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 2. Select Change wallpaper.
 - ► The pop-up menu appears on the screen.

- **3.** Select an app for selecting wallpapers.
- **4.** Select the wallpaper you want to change.
- 5. Select Set wallpaper.
 - ► The wallpaper is changed, then the screen will return to the home screen.

Status Area



- **1.** Swipe the upper area of the screen.
 - ▶ The status area appears.

- **2.** Select an item to see the details.
- **3.** Select so or swipe up the bottom bar to close the area.

Changing the Screen Interface

You can change the screen interface design.



- 1. Select 🟦
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the Others tab.
- 5. Select Change Skin.
- 6. Select Yes.

Changing the Screen Interface

After changing the screen interface design, you can change the wallpaper by following procedure.

- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select 🥡
- 3. Select and hold empty space on the home screen. The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 4. Select Change wallpaper.
- 5. Select Gallery, Live wallpapers, or Wallpapers.

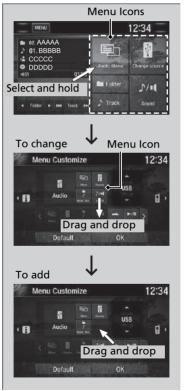
If you change the screen interface, some of the setting items will change.

Customized Features P. 400



Menu Customize

You can change menu icons on the right side of Audio, Phone, and Info screen.



- **1.** Select any of the three icons (**Audio**/ **Phone/Info**) on the screen, then select and hold the menu icon
 - Selecting the or icon, you can change Audio, Phone, or Info on the Menu Customize screen.

2. Select and hold the menu icon you want to change, then drag and drop the icon to the bottom.

- **3.** Select and hold the menu icon you want to add, then drag and drop the icon above.
- 4. Select OK.

Menu Customize

You can also use the method below to change the menu icon:

Select Settings—>System—>Home tab—>Menu Icon Position

Closing Apps

Task Manager

Gallerv

Browse

You can close specific apps running in the background on the system.



Show Clear

- 1. Select and hold **1**.
- 2. Select the Active tab.
 - ▶ If you select the **Active/History** tab, you can close the apps that are currently running and delete the app activity history simultaneously.
- **3.** Select an app you want to close.
- 4. Select Clear.
 - ▶ The display will return to the app list.

➢Closing Apps

If you have a number of apps running in the background and something goes wrong with the audio system, some of those apps may not work properly. If this happens, close all the apps and relaunch the app/apps that you want to use.

To close all apps on the system, select **Clear All**, then Yes.

You cannot close the Aha[™] and Garmin^{*} apps.

Adjusting the Sound

🗖 Audio Menu	12:34		
Scan	Music Search		
Sound	Setting		

□ Sound

Bass

Middle Treble

BAS MID TRE FAD BAL SUBW

12:34

- 1. Select 🚛.
- 2. Select MENU.
- 3. Select Sound.

Select a tab from the following choices:

- BAS-MID-TRE: Bass, Middle, Treble
- FAD-BAL-SUBW*: Fader, Balance, Subwoofer
- SVC: Speed Volume Compensation

Adjusting the Sound

The SVC has four modes: **Off**, **Low**, **Mid**, and **High**. SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

Display Setup

You can change the brightness or colour theme of the audio/information screen.

Changing the Screen Brightness

Display Settir	igs			12:34
Brightness			i	
Contrast		11		
Black Level		τü		

- 1. Select 🟦
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the **Display** tab.
- 5. Select Display Settings.
- 6. Select the setting you want.
- 7. Select OK.

Changing the Screen Brightness

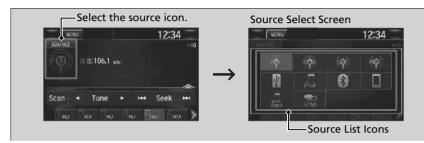
You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

Changing the Screen's Colour Theme

System Settings	12:34
Chisplay Settings Background Colour Duch Panel Security Childrance Volume (That Message Volume	Blue Amber Red Violet Blue Green OK

- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the **Display** tab.
- 5. Select Background Colour.
- 6. Select the setting you want.
- 7. Select OK.

Selecting an Audio Source



Select the current source icon, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

Selecting an Audio Source

If you startup preinstalled audio apps, the startup on the screen.

These preinstalled apps cannot be displayed on the source select screen.

You can startup those audio apps from ADDS.

When you are using the Aha[™] screen and you want to select another source, select **SOURCE** on the upper left of the screen. The source select screen will appear. Select the source you want.

Models with navigation system Voice Control Operation*1

Your vehicle has a voice control system that allows hands-free operation. The voice control system uses the \mathbb{K} (Talk) and \mathbb{C} (hang-up/back) buttons on the steering wheel and a microphone near the map lights in the ceiling.

Voice Recognition

To achieve optimum voice recognition when using the voice control system:

• Make sure the correct screen is displayed for the voice command that you are using.

The system recognizes only certain commands.

Available voice command

Voice Portal Screen* P. 345

- Close the windows and panoramic roof*.
- Adjust the dashboard and side vents so air does not blow onto the microphone in the ceiling.
- Speak clearly in a natural speaking voice without pausing between words.
- Reduce any background noise if possible. The system may misinterpret your command if more than one person is speaking at the same time.

*1: Languages that the voice control system recognises are English, German, French, Spanish, and Italian.

■Voice Control Operation*1

When you press the $\underline{\mathbb{M}}$ button, a helpful prompt asks what you would like to do. Press and release the $\underline{\mathbb{M}}$ button again to bypass this prompt and give a command.

➢Voice Recognition

The voice control system can only be used from the driver's seat because the microphone unit removes noises from the front passenger's side.

Voice Portal Screen*

Voice	Portal				
Phone Call	Navigation				
Music Search	Voice Setting				
Audio	Voice Help				
Climate Control					

When the <u>(Talk)</u> (Talk) button is pressed, available voice commands appear on the screen.

For a complete list of commands, say "Voice Help" after the beep or select **Voice Help**.

You can see the list of commands in **Voice Info** on the **Info Menu** screen. Select **Info**, then select **MENU**.

The system only recognises the commands on the following pages, at certain screens. Free form voice commands are not recognised.

Phone Call

This can be only used when the phone is connected. When the system recognises the *Phone call* command, the screen will change to the voice recognition screen for phone commands.

- Dial by Number
- Call History
- Redial
- Call <Your contact Name>
- Call <Phone Number>

Phone Call commands are not available if using Apple CarPlay.

Music Search

This can be only used when the iPod or USB device is connected.

Climate Control

When the system recognises the *Climate Control* command, the screen will change the dedicated screen to the climate control voice recognition screen.

Climate Control Commands P. 347

Audio

When the system recognises the *Audio* command, the screen will change to the audio voice recognition screen.

- Audio On^{*1}
- Audio Off*1
- Radio FM
- Radio MW
- Radio LW
- iPod
- USB
- Other Sources

Navigation

The screen changes to the navigation screen.

Refer to the Navigation System Manual

Voice Setting

The screen changes to the **Voice Recog.** tab on the **System Settings** screen.

*1: These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

Voice Help

You can see a list of the available commands on the screen.

- Useful Commands
- Phone Commands
- Audio Commands
- On Screen Commands
- Music Search Commands
- General Commands
- Climate Control Commands

Useful Commands

The system accepts these commands on the voice portal top screen.

- Call <Phone Number>
- Call <Your contact Name>
- What time is it?
- What is today's date?

Phone Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the phone.

- Call by number
- Call by name
- Call <Phone Number>
- Call <Your contact Name>

Audio Commands

The system accepts these commands on the dedicated screen for the voice recognition of the audio.

Radio FM Commands

- Radio tune to <87.5-108.0> FM
- Radio FM preset <1-12>

Radio LW Commands

- *Radio tune to <153-279> LW*
- Radio LW preset <1-6>

Radio MW Commands

- Radio tune to <531-1602> MW
- Radio MW preset <1-6>

iPod Commands

• iPod play

- iPod play track <1-30>
- Music Search
- What album is this?
- What am I listening to?

USB Commands

- USB play
- USB play track <1-30>
- Music Search
- What album is this?
- What am I listening to?

DAB Commands

• DAB preset <1-12>

Bluetooth[®] audio Commands

• Bluetooth[®] audio play **NOTE:**

Bluetooth[®] Audio commands may not work on some phones or *Bluetooth*[®] Audio devices.

■ HDMI[™] Commands

• HDMI Play

Features

Features

On Screen Commands

When **On Screen Commands** is selected, the explanation screen is displayed.

Music Search Commands

The system accepts these commands on the **Music Search** screen.

Using Song By Voice

Song By Voice[™] is a feature that allows you to select music from your iPod or USB device using Voice Commands. To activate this mode, you must push the talk switch and say: "Music search".

Song By Voice Commands

- What am I listening to?
- Who am I listening to?
- Who is this?
- What's playing?
- Who's playing?
- What album is this?

Play Commands

- Play artist <Name>
- Play track/song <Name>
- Play album <Name>
- Play genre/category <Name>
- Play playlist <Name>
- Play composer <Name>

List Commands

- List artist <Name>
- List album <Name>
- List genre/category <Name>
- List playlist <Name>
- List composer <Name>

General Commands

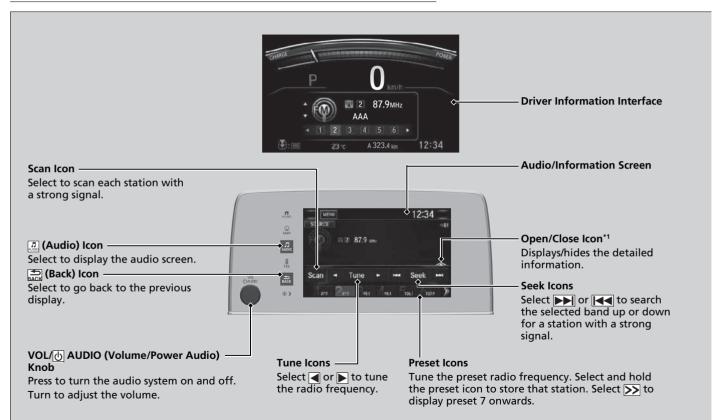
- What time is it?
- What is today's date?

Climate Control Commands

- Climate control on*1
- Climate control off*1
- Fan speed <1-7>
- Temperature max heat
- Temperature max cool
- Temperature <18-32> degrees
- Defrost On*1
- Defrost Off*1
- Air Conditioner On*1
- Air Conditioner Off*1
- More
- Vent
- Dash and floor
- Fan speed up
- Fan speed down
- Floor vents
- Floor and Defrost
- Temperature up
- Temperature down

*1: These commands toggle the function on and off, so the command may not match your intended action.

Playing AM/FM Radio



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Preset Memory

To store a station:

- **1.** Tune to the selected station.
- 2. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

You can also store a preset station by the following procedure.

- **1.** Tune to the selected station.
- 2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
- 3. Select the Preset tab.
- 4. Select and hold the preset number for the station you want to store.

Station List

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

- **1.** Select the open/close icon to display a list.
- 2. Select the Station List tab.
- 3. Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- **1.** Select the open/close icon to display a list.
- 2. Select the Station List tab.
- 3. Select Refresh.

Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts. Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode Press the \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

Audio Remote Controls P. 290

You can store 12 AM stations and 12 FM stations into preset memory. AM has two types of frequencies LW and MW, and each lets you store six stations.

🖉 Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or $\boxed{=}_{ACK}$.

Radio Data System (RDS)

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.

- 2. Select the Station List tab.
- 3. Select the station.

Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

- **1.** Select the open/close icon to display a list while listening to an FM station.
- 2. Select the Station List tab.
- 3. Select Refresh.

Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

- 1. Select MENU.
- 2. Select View Radio Text.

Scan

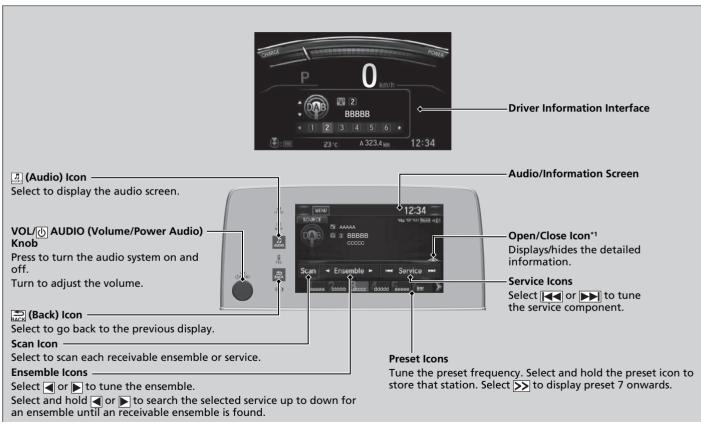
Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel** or Each

■Radio Data System (RDS)

When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

Playing DAB (Digital Audio Broadcasting)



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Preset Memory

To store a service:

- 1. Tune to the selected service.
- **2.** Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

You can also store a preset service by the following procedure.

- **1.** Tune to the selected service.
- 2. Select the open/close icon to display a list.
- 3. Select the Preset tab.
- **4.** Select and hold the preset number for the service you want to store.

Ensemble List

Lists the receivable ensembles on the selected service.

- **1.** Select the open/close icon to display a list.
- 2. Select the Ensemble List tab.
- 3. Select the ensemble.

Manual update

Updates your available ensemble list at any time.

- **1.** Select the open/close icon to display a list.
- 2. Select the Ensemble List tab.
- 3. Select Update List.

Preset Memory

Switching the Audio Mode Press the \blacktriangle or \bigtriangledown button on the steering wheel or select **SOURCE** on the screen.

Audio Remote Controls P. 290

You can store 12 DAB stations into preset memory.

🔳 Scan

Samples each of the receivable ensemble or service on the selected service for 10 seconds.

1. Select Scan.

2. Select Scan Ensemble or Scan Service.

To turn off scan, select **Cancel Scan**.

Radio text

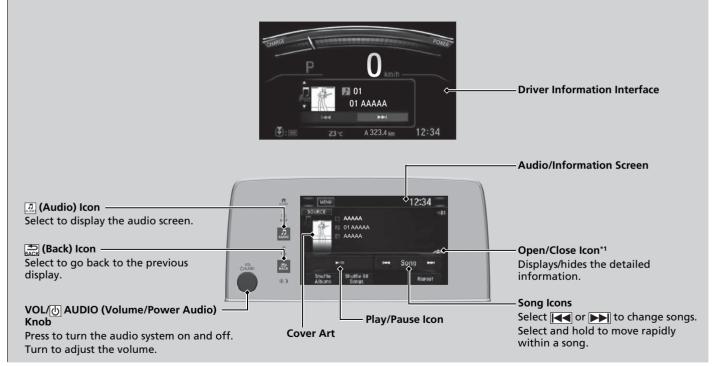
Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.

- 1. Select MENU.
- 2. Select View Radio Text.

Playing an iPod

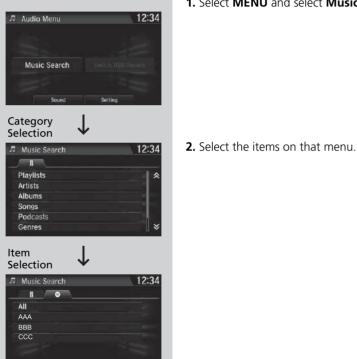
Connect the iPod using your USB connector to the USB port, then select the iPod mode.

DSB Port(s) P. 287



*1:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select MENU and select Music Search

➢Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

Piped/USB Flash Drive P 385

If you operate any music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the iPod/ USB source is unavailable and audio files on the phone can only be played within Apple CarPlay.

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.



Select a play mode.

➢How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Shuffle Albums: Plays all available albums in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Shuffle All Songs: Plays all available files in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, podcasts, genres, composers, or audiobooks) in random order.

Repeat: Repeats the current track.

To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

Song By Voice[™] (SBV)*

Use SBV to search for and play music from your USB flash drive or iPod using voice commands.

To enable SBV



- 1. Select 💼
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the Voice Recog. tab.
- 5. Select Song by Voice.
- 6. Select On or Off.

Song By Voice[™] (SBV)*

Setting options:

- **On** (factory default): Song By Voice[™] commands are available.
- Off: Disable the feature.

Searching for music using SBV



- 1. Set the Song by Voice setting to On.
- Press the [™]_M (Talk) button and say "Music Search" to activate the SBV feature for the USB flash drive and iPod.
- 3. Then, say a next command.
 - Example 1: Say "(List) 'Artist A'" to view a list of songs by that artist. Select the desired song to start playing.
 - Example 2: Say "Play 'Artist A'" to start playing songs by that artist.
- **4.** To cancel SBV, press the A steering wheel. The selected song continues playing.

Once you have cancelled this mode, you need to press the <u>button</u> and say *"Music Search"* again to re-activate this mode.

Searching for music using SBV

Song By Voice[™] Commands List

Song By Voice Commands P. 347

NOTE:

Song By Voice[™] commands are available for tracks stored on the USB flash drive or iPod.

You can add phonetic modifications of difficult words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands.

Phonetic Modification P. 359

SBV is not available when using Apple CarPlay. Use Siri Eyes Free instead.

Phonetic Modification

Add phonetic modifications of difficult or foreign words so that it is easier for SBV to recognize artists, songs, albums, and composers in voice commands when searching for music on the USB flash drive or iPod.



- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the Voice Recog. tab.
- 5. Select Song by Voice Phonetic Modification.
- 6. Select New Modification.
- 7. Select USB or iPod.

➢Phonetic Modification

Song by Voice Phonetic Modification function is not available when **Song by Voice** is set to **Off**.

You can store up to 2,000 phonetic modification items.

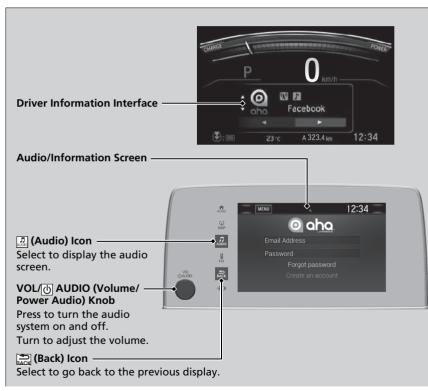


- 8. Select the item to modify (e.g., Artist).
 - The list of the selected item appears on the screen.
- 9. Select an entry to modify.
 - The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
 - ► To listen to the current phonetic modification, select **Play**.
 - ► To delete the current phonetic modification, select **Delete**.
- 10. Select Modify.
- **11.** Select the phonetic spelling you want to use (e.g., "Artist A") when prompted.
- 12. Select OK.
 - ▶ The artist "No Name" is phonetically modified to "Artist A." When in the SBV mode, you can press the <a>[w] (Talk) button and use the voice command "Play 'Artist A'" to play songs by the artist "No Name."

Playing Aha[™]

Aha[™] can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when your smartphone is connected to the audio system by Wi-Fi.

Wi-Fi Connection P. 374



■Playing Aha[™]

Aha[™] by Harman is a cloud-based service that organizes your favourite web content into live radio stations. You can access podcasts, internet radio, location-based services, and audio updates from social media sites.

Available operating functions vary on software versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

The menu items vary depending on the station you selected.

You must have a previously set up Aha[™] account prior to using the service in your vehicle. Visit *www.aharadio.com* for more information.

You want to select another source, select **AUDIO** on the upper left of the screen. The source select screen will appear. Select the source you want.

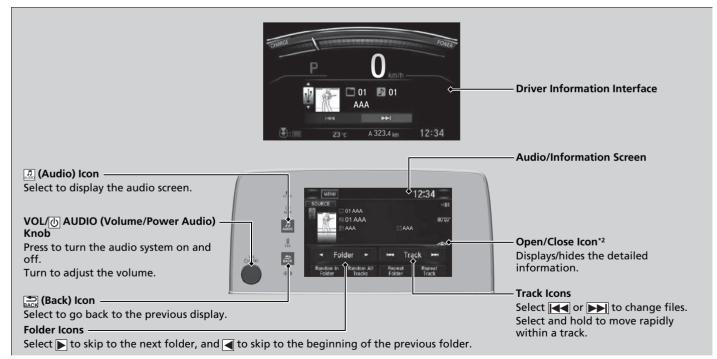
If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, Aha[™] can only be accessed when the phone is connected through Wi-Fi.

Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and video files on a USB flash drive in either MP3. WMA. AAC^{*1}, or MP4 format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB port, then select the USB mode.

DSB Port(s) P. 287



*1:Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

*2:Some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

How to Select a File from the Music Search List		≥Playing a USB Flash Drive
37 Audio Menu 12:34 Scan Music Search Scant Setting	1. Select MENU and select Music Search.	Use the recommended USB flash drives. General Information on the Audio System P. 387 WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played. The audio system displays Unplayable File, then skips to the next file.
Music Search 12:34 Music Movie	2. Select Music or Movie.	If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen. If Pod/USB Flash Drive P. 385
Folder Selection V Music Search 12:34 10 10 Root A 00 BBBBB 04 01 CCCCC 06 EEEE	3. Select a folder.	
Track Selection ↓ Music Search 12:34 01 01 - aaaaa 02 02 - bbbbb 03 03 - coccc 04 04 - ddddd 05 05 - eeeee 06 06 - fffff	4. Select a track.	

How to Select a Play Mode

You can select scan, repeat, and random modes when playing a file.

Audio Menu	12:34
Scan	Music Search
	Setting

- ScanSelect MENU.Select Scan.
- **3.** Select a play mode.

■ Random/Repeat

Select a play mode.

How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

Scan

Scan Folders: Provides 10-second sampling of the first file in each of the main folders.

Scan Tracks: Provides 10-second sampling of all files in the current folder.

Random/Repeat

Random in Folder: Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

Random All Tracks: Plays all files in random order. Repeat Folder: Repeats all files in the current folder. Repeat Track: Repeats the current file.

When playing a video file: **Play/Pause**: Plays or pauses the file. **Stop**: Stops the file.



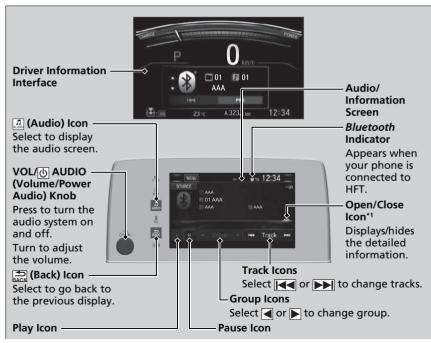
■ To turn off a play mode To turn off Scan, select and or **Cancel**. To turn off Random or Repeat, select the mode you want to turn off.

Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 456



*1:Depending on the *Bluetooth*[®] device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Playing Bluetooth® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible. To check if your phone is compatible, ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*[®] Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*[®] Audio from that phone is unavailable. However, a second previously paired phone can stream *Bluetooth*[®] Audio by selecting **Connect** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

To Play *Bluetooth*[®] Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.

Phone Setup P. 456

2. Select the *Bluetooth®* Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFTcompatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*[®] Audio, may already be connected.

To Play Bluetooth® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone in the $Bluetooth^{\circ}$ settings on the **Audio Menu** screen by the following procedure.

- 1. Select MENU.
- 2. Select Setting.

To pause or resume a file

Select the play icon or pause icon.

Searching for Music

Audio	Menu		12:34
			1.000
			125
	Music	Search	-
			12200
	Sound	Settin	9

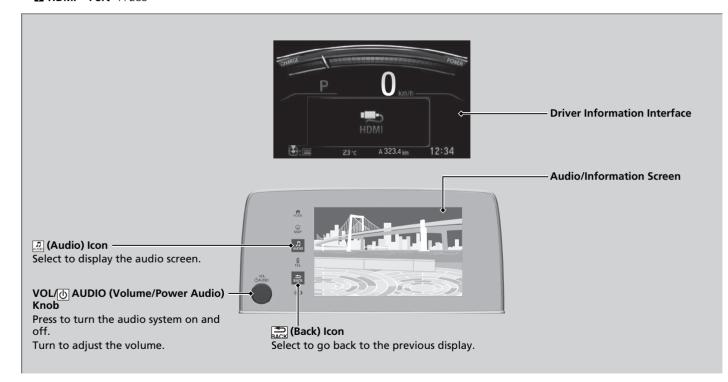
- 1. Select MENU.
- 2. Select Music Search.
- 3. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).
- 4. Select an item.
 - ► The selection begins playing.

Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*[®] device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

Playing a Video Using the HDMI[™]

Your audio system allows you to play videos from an HDMI-compatible device. Connect the device, using an HDMI[™] cable, then select the HDMI[™] mode. ■ HDMI[™] Port* P. 288



Changing the Screen Aspect



- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Audio.
- 4. Select the Video tab.
- 5. Select Aspect Ratio Adjustment.
- 6. Select the setting you want.
- 7. Select OK.

➢Playing a Video Using the HDMI[™]

This feature is limited while driving. To play videos, stop your vehicle and apply the parking brake.

On Board Apps

Honda Connect has the capability of On Board Apps which may be created by Honda or by 3rd parties. Apps may be already installed or can be downloaded through Honda App Centre. Some Apps require internet access which can be established by Wi-Fi Connection.

Wi-Fi Connection P. 374

Please visit the below web address for further information: https://ivhs.os.ixonos.com/honda/category/carApps.html

12:34

- App Centre Icon Honda App Centre provides access to a variety of App related services. ➢On Board Apps

Even if you change **Background Colour** on the **System Settings** screen, it will not be reflected on the Honda App Centre screen.

- Using the Display Audio system while driving can take your attention away from the road, causing a crash in which you could be seriously injured or killed. Only operate system controls when the conditions permit you to safely do so. **Please always adhere to the laws of the territory when operating this device.**
- Applications on the head unit are subject to change at anytime. This may mean that they are not available or operate differently. Honda shall not be liable to you in such instances.
- Applications available on the device may be provided by parties other than Honda to which 3rd party software licences and charges may apply.
- Data usage and roaming charges may result in using applications on the device in conjunction with your mobile phone and Honda is not liable for any costs you might incur from such use. Honda recommends you consult your mobile phone network provider in advance.
- Downloading applications from the Honda App Centre will be subject to Terms and Conditions which can be found at: https://ivhs.os.ixonos.com/honda/category/carApps.html, and may also incur charges.

Smartphone Connection

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/ information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable.

Connecting Your iPhone P. 372

Connecting Your Smartphone P. 373

Smartphone Connection

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on your smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth*[®] connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

To change the currently paired phone P. 457

The following may vary by phone type:

- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time

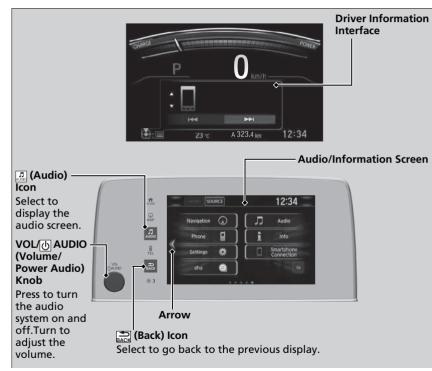
We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

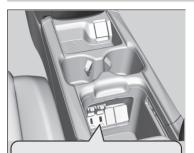
Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

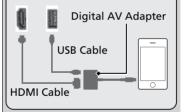
To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*[®].

Phone Setup P. 456



Connecting Your iPhone





1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*[®].

Phone Setup P. 456

- 2. Plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI[™] port.
- **3.** Connect the digital AV adapter to your iPhone.
 - ► Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
- **4.** Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
 - You may need to operate from the phone.
- **5.** Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
 - ► To go back to the previous screen, select

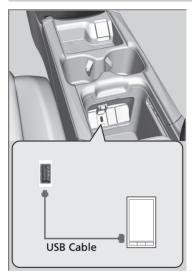
Connecting Your iPhone

Make sure to plug in the digital AV adapter to the HDMI[™] port first. If not, smartphone connection may not work properly.

To recharge your phone, connect it to the USB port, too.

Contact a dealer for the digital AV adapter or $\mathsf{HDMI}^{\mathsf{TM}}$ purchasing information.

Connecting Your Smartphone



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*[®].

Phone Setup P. 456

- **2.** Plug in your phone to the USB jack.
 - You may need to operate from the phone.
 - ► Wait until an arrow appears on the home screen.
- **3.** Select the arrow to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.
- **4.** Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.
 - ► To go back to the previous screen, select

Connecting Your Smartphone

The phone is rechargeable while being connected to the USB jack. However, if the phone is overloaded with many operational tasks, the battery level may get lowered.

Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the Display Audio to the Internet using Wi-Fi and browse websites or use online services on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)



- 1. Select 💼
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Bluetooth / Wi-Fi.
- 4. Select the Wi-Fi tab.
- 5. Select Wi-Fi On/Off Status, then select On.
- 6. Select Yes.
- 7. Select Wi-Fi Device List.
 - Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.
 - Select the phone you want to connect to the system.
 - If you do not find the phone you want to connect in the list, select Scan.

Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to setup the Wi-Fi connection.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the ricon on the **Wi-Fi Device List** screen. Network speed will not be displayed on this screen.

Wi-Fi Device List	12:34
AAAAA	
	Add
	Disconnect
	Dehoter

8. Select Add.

- If needed, enter a password for your phone and select **Done**.
- When the connection is successful, the ricon is displayed on the top of the screen.
- **9.** Select **m** to go back to the home screen.

Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

iPhone users

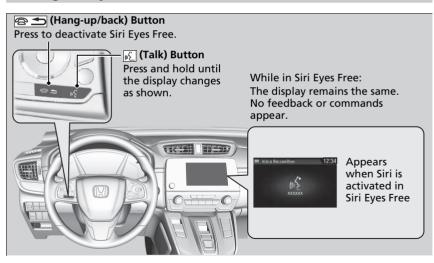
You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using the $\underline{\mathbb{M}}$ (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

Phone Setup P. 456

Using Siri Eyes Free



≥Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

We recommend against using Siri other than in Siri Eyes Free while operating a vehicle.

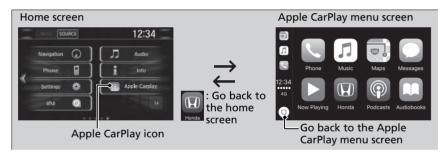
≥Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages. USB Port(s) P. 287

Apple CarPlay Menu



Phone

Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.

Messages

Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

Music

Play music stored on your iPhone.

■Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Apple CarPlay, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. Other USB ports will not enable Apple CarPlay operation.

USB Port(s) P. 287

To directly access the Apple CarPlay phone function, select **Phone** on the home screen. While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone system, turn Apple CarPlay OFF or detach the USB cable from your iPhone.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay P. 379

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*[®] Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*[®] while Apple CarPlay is connected.

Phone Setup P. 456

Maps

Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

➢Apple CarPlay

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the 1.5A USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the Display Audio Screen.

Enabling Apple CarPlay

SOUR	ex.	12:34
may use some location and sp the Apple Priva	to enable Apple CarP user and vehicle infor seed) to enhance serv acy policy and IOS ten relection later under th	mation (e.g. ice. It is subject to ms of use. You may

Enable once: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)
Always enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)
Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

Setting Up Apple CarPlay

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the 🔬 (Talk) button to activate Siri.



Derating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri.

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit *www.apple.com/ios/siri*.

Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the Display Audio system via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

DSB Port(s) P. 287

Auto Pairing Connection P. 383

NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

≫Android Auto

To use Android Auto, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto. Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used with Android Auto phone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

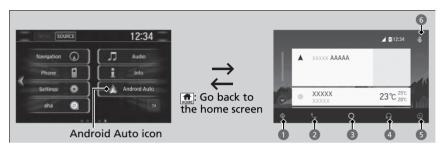
To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the 1.5A USB port. Other USB ports will not enable Android Auto operation.

DSB Port(s) P. 287

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth®* Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth®* while Android Auto is connected.

Phone Setup P. 456

Android Auto Menu



1 Maps (Navigation)

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/Information screen shows you turn-by turn driving directions to your destination.

2 Phone (Communication)Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

B Google Now (Home screen)

Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

≫Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active cellular connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

4 Music and audio

Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

Go back to the Home Screen.Voice

Operate Android Auto with your voice.

Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the 1.5A USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

Enabling Android Auto



Enable once: Allows only once. (Prompt shows again next time.)Always enable: Allows anytime. (Prompt does not show again.)Cancel: Does not allow this consent.

You may change the consent settings under the **Smartphone** settings menu.

Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the [15] (Talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



Derating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the $[]{ {\ensuremath{\mathfrak{S}}}}$ icon in the upper-right corner of the screen.

iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution	
USB error ^{*1, *2}	Appears when there is a problem with the audio system. Check if the device is compatible with the audio system.	
A charging error has occurred with the connected USB device. When safe please check the compatibility of the device and USB cable and try again.*2	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.	
Unsupported ver ^{*1} Unsupported Version ^{*2}	Appears when an unsupported iPod is connected. If it appears when a supported iPod is connected, update the iPod software to the newer version.	
Connect retry ^{*1, *2}	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.	
Unplayable File ^{*1, *2}	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song	
No song ^{*1} No Data ^{*2}	 iPod Appears when the iPod is empty. USB flash drive Appears when the USB flash drive is empty or there are no MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV*, or MP4* files in the USB flash drive. iPod and USB flash drive Check that compatible files are stored on the device. 	

*1:Models with colour audio system

*2:Models with Display Audio

Error Message	Solution
Unsupported ^{*1,*2}	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device.
Device no response ^{*1}	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
HUB Unsupported ^{*1}	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.

- *1:Models with colour audio system
- *2:Models with Display Audio

Models with Display Audio

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message*1	Solution
Unfortunately, **** has stopped.	Error has occurred within app, select OK on the screen to close the app.
**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?	App is not responding. Select Wait if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select OK to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform Factory Data Reset. Defaulting All the Settings P. 427

*1:****part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

*1:Models with Display Audio

USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, WAV*, or MP4* formats may be unsupported.

➢iPod and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

≥USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

Recommended D	evices*
---------------	---------

Media		sh Drive	
Iviedia	USB FId	ShiDhve	
Profile (MP4 version)	Baseline Level 3 (MPEG4-AVC), Simple Level 5 (MPEG4)		
File extension (MP4 version)	.mp4/.m4v		
Compatible audio codec	AAC	MP3	
Compatible video codec	MPEG4-AVC (H.264)	MPEG4 (ISO/IEC 14496 Part.2)	
Bit rate	10 Mbps (MPEG4-AVC)	8 Mbps (MPEG4)	
Maximum image	720 x 576 pixels		

Models with Display Audio

Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE IOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO ("THE APPLICATIONS") IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE." WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND. AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, OUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED. REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY, AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME: HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE. SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION. ETC. IN ADDITION. YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

About Open Source Licences

To see the open source Licence information, follow these steps.

Models with colour audio system

- **1.** Press the **MENU/CLOCK** button.
- 2. Rotate 🗇 to select Settings, then press 🕹.
- 3. Rotate 🗇 to select License, then press 🕹.

Models with Display Audio

- 1. Select 🟦
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the Others tab.
- 5. Select Detailed Information.
- 6. Select About device.
- 7. Select Legal information.
- 8. Select Open-source licences.

Models with eCall Unit

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product contains Free/Open Source Software (FOSS). The license information and/or the source code of such FOSS can be found at the following URL.

https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/tcu/honda/

➢About Open Source Licences

LICENCE: Copyright © 2001 Bob Trower, Trantor Standard Systems Inc.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

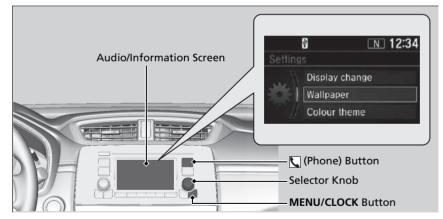
THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

Models with colour audio system

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, press the **MENU/CLOCK** button, then select **Settings**. To customize the phone settings, press the **Setting** button, then select **Phone setup**.



➢Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Set the parking brake.

➢How to customize

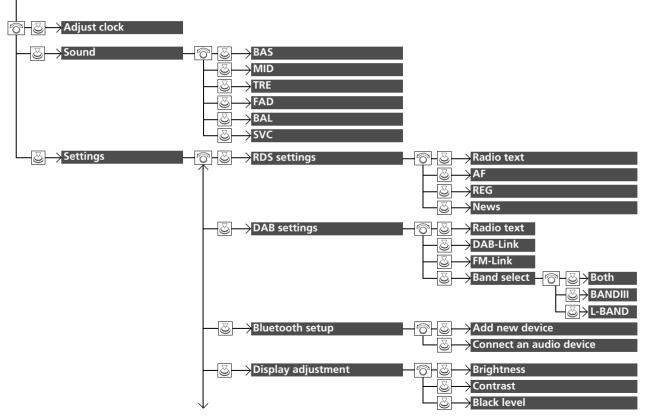
These indications are used to show how to operate the selector knob. Rotate \bigcirc to select. Press $\stackrel{\odot}{\Rightarrow}$ to enter.

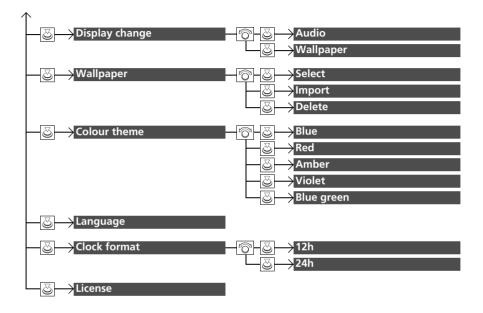
To customize other features, select Settings, rotate \bigcirc , then press \circlearrowright .

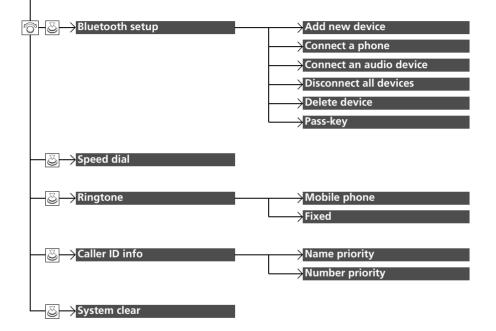
List of customizable options P. 396

Customization Flow

Press the MENU/CLOCK button.







Press the \mathbb{N} button and rotate \bigcirc to select **Phone setup**, then press \circlearrowright .

List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
Adjust clock			Adjust Clock. Clock P. 180	—
Sound			Adjusts the sound. Adjusting the Sound P. 299	BAS/MID/TRE/FAD/BAL/ SVC
		Radio text	Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.	On/Off ^{*1}
	RDS	AF	Automatically changes the frequency of the same programme as you enter different region.	SVC ed On/Off*1 me On*1/Off in On*1/Off ed On/Off*1 ed On/Off*1 on*1/Off On
	settings REG	REG	Keeps the same frequency of the stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.	On*1/Off
		News	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	the On/Off*1
Settings		Radio text	Displays the radio text information of the selected DAB station.	BAS/MID/TRE/FAD/BAL/ SVC On/Off*1 On*1/Off On/Off*1 On/Off*1 On/Off*1 On/Off*1 On/Off*1
	DAB	DAB-Link	Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.	
	settings	FM-Link	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band.	
		Band select	Selects specific bands to reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.	Both*1/BANDIII/L-BAND

Setup Group	Custo	omizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
	Bluetooth setup	Add new device	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits and deletes a paired phone, and create a code for a paired phone.	—
		Connect an audio device	Connects, disconnects or pairs a <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio device to HFT.	
Settings		Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	Display adjustment	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
		Black level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—
	Display chan	ige	Changes the display type.	Audio ^{*1} /Wallpaper

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
		Select	Changes the wallpaper type.	Clock*1/Image 1/Image 2/ Image 3
	Wallpaper	ber Import	Imports an image file for a new wallpaper. Wallpaper Setup P. 297	—
		Delete	Deletes an image file for a wallpaper.	Image 1/Image 2/Image 3
Cottings	Colour theme		Changes the background colour of the audio/	Blue ^{*1} /Red/Amber/Violet/
Settings	Colour then	le	information screen.	Blue green
	Language		Changes the display language.	UK English ^{*1} : See other selectable languages on the screen.
	Clock forma	t	Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12h*1/24h
	License		Shows the legal information.	—

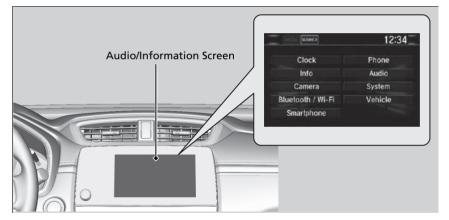
Setup Group	(ustomizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
		Add new device	Pairs a new phone to HFT. Phone Setup P. 434	_	
	Bluetooth setup	Connect a phone	Pairs a new phone or connects a paired phone to HFT. Phone Setup P. 434	_	
		Connect an audio device	Connects a <i>Bluetooth</i> [®] Audio device to HFT.		
		Disconnect all devices	Disconnects a paired phone from HFT.		
hone		Delete device	Deletes a paired phone.		
etup		Pass-key	Inputs and changes a code for a paired phone.		
	Speed dial		Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. Speed Dial P. 442		
	Ringtone		Selects the ring tone.	Mobile phone ^{*1} /Fixed	
	Caller ID info)	Prioritizes the caller's name or phone number as the caller ID.	Name priority ^{*1} /Number priority	
	System clear		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone setup group as default.	_	

Models with Display Audio

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

How to customize

While the vehicle is at a complete stop with the power mode in ON, select **fine**, and **Settings**, then select a setting item.



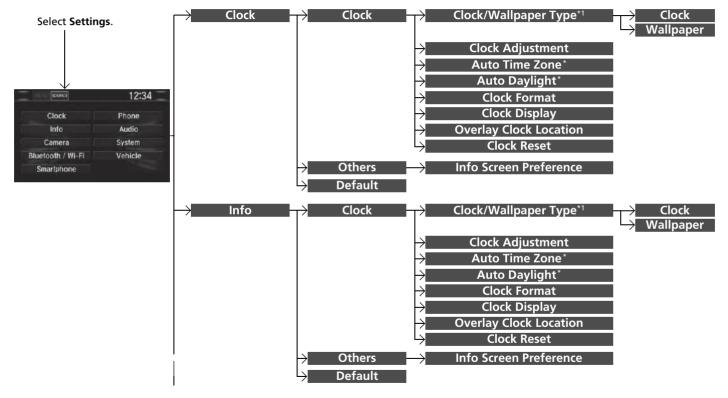
➢Customized Features

When you customize settings:

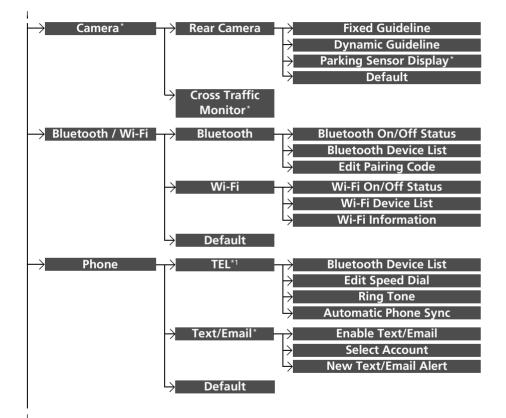
- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Put the transmission into **P**.

To customize other features, select **Settings**. **D** List of customizable options P. 409

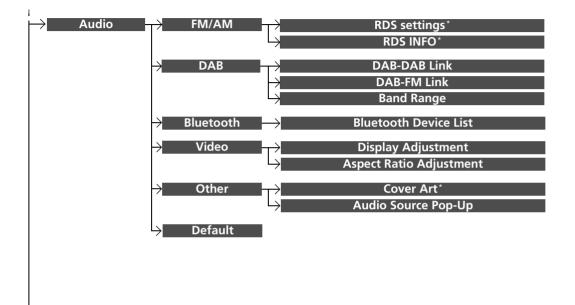


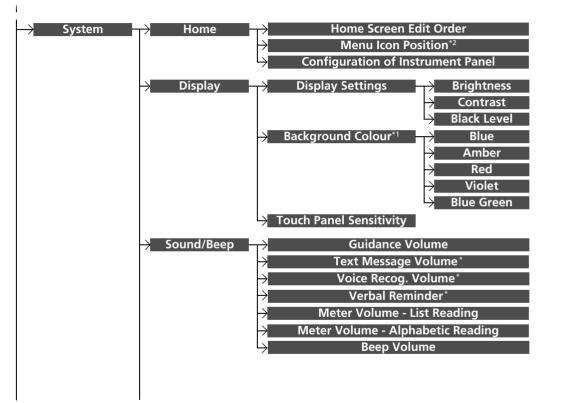


*1: Clock Type appears when you change the screen interface design.



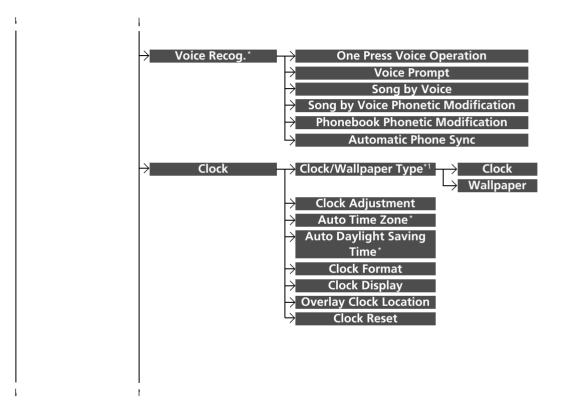
*1: **TEL** tab is displayed depending on models.



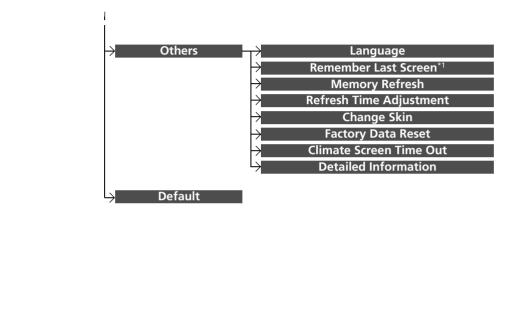


*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

*2: Appears only when you change the screen interface design.



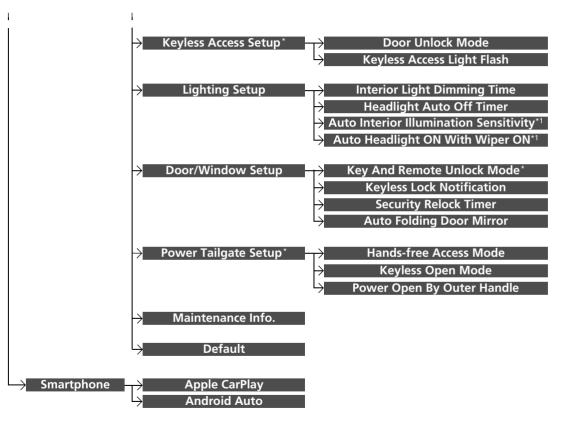
*1: Clock Type appears when you change the screen interface design.



*1: Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

	Defletion Merring System	Contract
-> Vehicle -	Deflation Warning System -	Cancel
		Initialise
	Driver Assist System Setup -	Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning
		Distance
		ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep
		Blind Spot Information*
		Lane Keep Assist Beep
		Road Departure Mitigation Setting
		ACC Cut-in Prediction Control
		Driver Attention Monitor
		Head-Up Warning*
	→ Meter Setup –	Warning Message
		Adjust Outside Temp. Display
		Trip A" Reset Timing
		"Trip B" Reset Timing
		Alarm Volume Control
		Fuel Efficiency Backlight
		Turn By Turn Display
		New Message Notifications*
		Reverse Position Alert Tone
		Speed/Distance Units*
	Duiving Desition Cotour	
	Driving Position Setup	Memory Position Link*
		Seatbelt E-Pretensioner Sport Setting

ł.



*1: Because this screen phrase varies depending on the models, it used in this manual may differ from the actual screen phrase.

List of customizable options

Setup Group	C	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
		Clock/Wallpaper Clo	ock			
		Type ^{*1} /Clock Type ^{*2} Wa	allpaper			
		Clock Adjustment		-		
		Auto Time Zone*				
	Clock	Auto Daylight*		- See Info on P. 410		
Clock		Clock Format		- See into on F. 410		
		Clock Display				
		Overlay Clock Location				
		Clock Reset				
	Others	Info Screen Preference				
	Default			Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Clock settings group as default.	Yes/No	

*1:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design. *2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group		Customizable Feat	ures	Description	Selectable Settings
		Clock/	Clock	Changes the clock display type.	Analog/Digital ^{*1} / Small Digital/Off
		Wallpaper Type ^{*2/} Clock Type ^{*3}	Type*2/Clock • Changes the wallpaper type. Type*3 Wallpaper		Blank/Galaxy*1/ Metallic
Info	Clask	Clock Adjustment	ent	Adjusts Clock.	_
Info	Clock	Auto Time Zone	e *	Automatically adjusts the clock when driving through different time zones.	On*1/Off
		Auto Daylight*		Select On to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock to daylight savings time. Select Off to cancel this function.	On*1/Off
		Clock Format		Selects the digital clock display from 12H to 24H.	12H*1/24H

*1:Default Setting *2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design. *3:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
		Clock Display	Selects whether the clock display comes on.	On ^{*1} /Off	
	Clock	k Overlay Clock Location	Changes the clock display layout.	Right Upper ^{*1} /Left Upper/Right Lower/ Left Lower/Off	
		Clock Reset	Resets the clock settings to the factory default.	Yes/No	
Info	Others	Info Screen Preference	 Selects the top menu when the (display/ information) button is pressed. Info Top- A brief menu pops up. Info Menu- A full menu pops up. Off- A menu does not pop up. 	Right Upper*1/Left Upper/Right Lower/ Left Lower/Off	
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Info settings group as default.	Yes/No	

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
		Fixed Guideline	Selects whether the fixed guidelines come on the rear camera monitor. Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 616	On*1/Off
	Rear Camera	Dynamic Guideline	Selects whether the guidelines adjust to the movement of the steering wheel. Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 616	On*1/Off
Camera*		Parking Sensor Display [*]	Changes the view of the rear camera display	Normal View/Split View ^{*1}
		Default	Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Rear Camera setting group as default.	Yes/No
	Cross Traffic Monitor*	Cross Traffic Monitor	Turns the cross traffic monitor feature on and off.	On*1/Off

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings	
		Bluetooth On/Off Status	Changes the <i>Bluetooth</i> [®] status.	On ^{*1} /Off	
	Bluetooth	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone.	_	
Bluetooth /		Edit Pairing Code	Edits a pairing code. To change the pairing code setting P. 457	Random/Fixed ^{*1}	
Wi-Fi		Wi-Fi On/Off Status	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	On/Off *1	
	Wi-Fi	Wi-Fi Device List	Connects, disconnects, or deletes the Wi-Fi device.	_	
		Wi-Fi Information	Shows the Wi-Fi information of the head unit.		
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Bluetooth / Wi-Fi group as default.	Yes/No	

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
	TEL*2	Bluetooth Device List	Pairs a new phone to HFT, connects or disconnects a paired phone.	-
		Edit Speed Dial	Edits, adds or deletes a speed dial entry. Speed Dial P. 462	—
	Ring Tone Selects the ring tone.		Selects the ring tone.	Fixed/Mobile Phone ^{*1}
Phone		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets a phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	ects a paired Fixed/Mobile Phone*1 utomatically off. On*1/Off off. On*1/Off creen when HFT On/Off
		Enable Text/Email	Turns the text/e-mail message function on and off.	On ^{*1} /Off
	Text/	Select Account	Selects a text or e-mail message account.	—
	Email*	New Text/Email Alert	Selects whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFT receives a new text/e-mail message.	On/Off
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Phone settings group as default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting *2:**TEL** tab is displayed depending on models.

Setup Group		Customizable	e Features	Description	Selectable Settings
			TA Information	Turns on and off the traffic information.	On/Off ^{*1}
		RDS	AF	Turns on and off to automatically change the frequency of the same programme as you enter different regions.	On*1/Off
	FM/AM mode FM/AM	settings*	REG	Turns on and off to keep the same stations within that region even if the signal gets weak.	On*1/Off
Audio			News	Turns on and off to automatically to tune to the news programme.	On/Off ^{*1}
Audio		RDS INFO *		Turns on and off the RDS information.	On*1/Off
		DAB-DAB Li	nk	Selects whether the system automatically searches for the same station from Ensembles, and switches to it.	On*1/Off
	DAB mode DAB	DAB-FM Lin	k	Selects whether the system finds the same station from an FM band, and automatically switches the band.	On*1/Off
		Band Range		Selects specific bands to reduce the time to update the lists, and search for a station.	Both*1/Band III/L-Band

Setup Group		Customizable	Features		Description	Selectable Settings
	Bluetooth [®] mode Bluetooth Bluetooth Device List			Pairs a new phone to HFT, edits or deletes a paired phone. Phone Setup P. 456		
				Brightness		
	Video	Display Adjustment	Display	Contrast	See System on P. 417	
				Black Level	-	
		Display Adjustment	Colour	Colour	Changes the colour of the audio/ information screen.	—
Audio	Video			Tint	Changes the tint of the audio/information screen.	
	-	Aspect Ratio Adjustment		nt	Selects the display mode with a different aspect ratio from Original (only USB), Normal, Full and Zoom .	Original ^{*1} (only USB)/Normal/ Full ^{*1} /Zoom
		[Your selected Cover Art*	media]		Turns the cover art display on and off.	On*1/Off
	Other	Audio Source Pop-Up			Selects whether the list of selectable audio source comes on when Audio is selected on the home screen.	On/Off*1
	Default	ault		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Audio settings group as default.	Yes/No	

416 * Not available on all models

Setup Group	Cu	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
		Home Scree	en Edit Order	Changes the home screen icon layout.	—
	Home	Menu Icon	Position ^{*2}	Changes the position of the menu icons on the Audio , Phone , and Info screen.	_
		Configuration of Instrument Panel		Changes the Instrument Panel screen icon layout.	—
System			Brightness	Changes the brightness of the audio/information screen.	—
	Display	Settings	Contrast	Changes the contrast of the audio/information screen.	—
			Black Level	Changes the black level of the audio/information screen.	—

*1:Default Setting *2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
	Display	Background Colour*2	Changes the background colour of the audio/ information screen.	Blue ^{*1} /Amber/Red/ Violet/Blue Green
		Touch Panel Sensitivity	Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	High/Low*1
		Guidance Volume	Changes the sound volume. Adjusts the guidance volume of the navigation system.	0~6 ^{*1} ~11
System		Text Message Volume*	Changes the text/e-mail message reading volume.	1~6 ^{*1} ~11
System	Sound/	Voice Recog. Volume*	Changes the volume of the voice prompt.	1~6 ^{*1} ~11
	Beep	Meter Volume - List Reading	Changes the list reading volume.	0~6 ^{*1} ~11
		Meter Volume - Alphabetic Reading	Changes the alphabetic reading volume.	0~6 ^{*1} ~11
		Verbal Reminder*	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	On*1/Off
		Beep Volume	Changes the beep volume.	Off/1/2*1/3

*1:Default Setting *2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
		One Press Voice Operation	Changes the setting of the <u></u> (Talk) button operation when using the voice operation.	On ^{*1} /Off
		Voice Prompt	Turns the voice prompt on and off.	On*1/Off
		Song by Voice	Turns the Song By Voice™ on and off.	On ^{*1} /Off
System	Voice Recog.*	Song by Voice Phonetic Modification	Modifies a voice command for music stored in the system or an iPod/iPhone.	-
		Phonebook Phonetic Modification	Modifies a voice command for the phonebook. Phonebook Phonetic Modification* P. 465	—
		Automatic Phone Sync	Sets phonebook and call history data to be automatically imported when a phone is paired to HFT.	On/Off

Setup Group		Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
		Clock/Wallpaper Type*1/ Clock Type*2	Clock Wallpaper		
		Clock Adjustment			
		Auto Time Zone*			
System	Clock	Auto Daylight Saving Time*		See Info on P. 410	
		Clock Format			
		Clock Display			
		Overlay Clock Location			
		Clock Reset			

*1:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design. *2:Appears only when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Cu	ustomizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
		Language	Change the display language.	English (United Kingdom) ^{*1} : See other selectable languages on the screen.
		Remember Last Screen*2	Selects whether the device remembers the last screen.	On/Off*1
		Memory Refresh	Turns on the audio system automatically and restores the fragmentation of a memory when the power mode is VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).	On*1/Off
	Others	Refresh Time Adjustment	Sets the time for Memory Refresh .	—
System		Change Skin	Changes the screen interface design.	Yes/No
		Factory Data Reset	Resets all the settings to their factory default. Defaulting All the Settings P. 427	Yes/No
		Climate Screen Time Out	Changes the length of time the climate control display stays on when you press the CLIMATE button.	Never/5 Seconds/ 10 Seconds ^{*1} /20 Seconds
		Detailed Information	Displays the details of the head unit and operating system information.	_
	Default		Cancels /Resets all customized items in the System group as default.	Yes/No

*1:Default Setting *2:Does not appear when you change the screen interface design.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
	Deflation \	Warning System	Initialises the deflation warning system.	Cancel ^{*1} /Initialise
		Preceding Vehicle Proximity Warning Distance	Changes the distance at which CMBS alerts.	Far/Normal*1/Near
		ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	On/Off*1
	Driver Assist System Setup	Blind Spot Information*	Changes the setting for the blind spot information.	Audible And Visual Alert*1/Visual Alert Only/ Off
Vehicle		Lane Keep Assist Beep	Causes the system to beep when Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is suspended.	On/Off*1
		Setup	Road Departure Mitigation Setting	Changes the setting for the road departure mitigation system.
		ACC Cut-in Prediction Control	Turns the ACC cut-in prediction control feature on and off.	On*1/Off
		Driver Attention Monitor	Changes the setting for the driver attention monitor.	OFF/Tactile Alert Only/ Tactile And Audible Alert ^{*1}
		Head-Up Warning*	Turns the head-up warning on and off.	On ^{*1} /Off

Setup Group	Customiz	zable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
		Warning Message	Selects whether the warning message comes on the driver information interface.	On/Off*1
		Adjust Outside Temp. Display	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	-3°C ~ ±0°C*1 ~ +3°C
		"Trip A" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset ^{*1}
Vehicle	Meter Setup	"Trip B" Reset Timing	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	When Refueled/When Ignition Is Turned Off/Manual Reset ^{*1}
		Alarm Volume Control	Changes the alarm volume, such as buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	Max/Mid*1/Min
		Fuel Efficiency Backlight	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	On*1/Off

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
		Turn By Turn Display	Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance in the meter and head-up display [*] .	On*1/Off
	Meter Setup	New Message Notifications*	Used to select whether a pop-up alert comes on the screen when HFT receives a new text/e-mail message.	On*1/Off
		Reverse Position Alert Tone	Causes the beeper to sound when you put the transmission into $[\mathbf{R}]$.	On*1/Off
Vehicle		Speed/Distance Units*	Selects the trip computer units.	mph·miles ^{*2/} km/h·km ^{*2}
	Driving	Memory Position Link*	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	On*1/Off
	Position Setup	Seatbelt E-Pretensioner Sport Setting	Turn on or off the seatbelt auto tension setting that removes seatbelt slack when the vehicle is started and during sporty manoeuvres.	On*1/Off
	Keyless	Door Unlock Mode	Changes which doors unlock when you grab the driver's door handle.	Driver Door Only ^{*1} / All Doors
	Access Setup*	Keyless Access Light Flash	Causes some exterior lights to flash when you unlock/lock the doors.	On*1/Off

*1:Default Setting *2:The default setting varies depending on the model.

Setup Group	Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
		Interior Light Dimming Time	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	15sec/30sec*1/60sec
		Headlight Auto Off Timer	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	0sec/15sec ^{*1/} 30sec/60sec
	Lighting Setup	Auto Interior Illumination Sensitivity ^{*2}	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.	Max/High/Mid ^{*1} /Low/Min
Vehicle		Auto Headlight ON With Wiper ON ^{*2}	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the AUTO position.	On*1/Off
	Unlock Mode*on the first pushKeyless LockLOCK/UNLOCK-		Sets up the driver's door or all the doors to unlock on the first push of the remote.	Driver Door Only ^{*1} /All Doors
		LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash. LOCK (2nd push)- The beeper sounds.	On*1/Off	
	Window Setup	Security Relock Timer	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	90sec/60sec/30sec*1
		Auto Folding Door Mirror	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	Auto Fold With Keyless*1/ Manual Only

*1:Default Setting *2:Because this screen phrase varies depending on the models, it used in this manual may differ from the actual screen phrase.

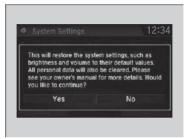
* Not available on all models

Features

Setup Group	up Group Customizable Features		Description	Selectable Settings
	Power Tailgate Setup*	Hands-free Access Mode	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by a swift forward in and out kicking motion under the rear bumper.	On*1/Off
		Keyless Open Mode	Changes the keyless setting for when the power tailgate opens.	Anytime*1/When Unlocked
Vehicle		Power Open By Outer Handle	Changes the setting to open power tailgate by tailgate outer handle.	Off (Manual only)/On (Power/Manual)*1
	Maintenar	nce Info.	Used to reset the service reminder system information display*/oil monitor system information* when the maintenance service has been performed.	—
	Default		Cancels/Resets all customized items in the Vehicle settings group as default.	Yes/No
Smartnhana	Apple Car	Play	Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	—
Smartphone	Android A	uto	Sets up the Android Auto connection.	_

Defaulting All the Settings

Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.



- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the Others tab.
- 5. Select Factory Data Reset.
- A confirmation message appears on the screen.
- 6. Select Yes to reset the settings.
- 7. Select Yes again to reset the settings.
 - ► A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **OK**.
 - After selecting **OK**, the system will reboot.

Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

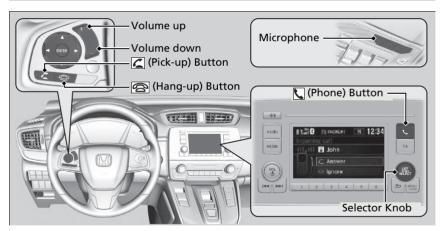
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

Models with colour audio system

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

HFT Buttons



(Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up) button: Press to end a call.

(Phone) button: Press to go directly to the phone screen.

Selector knob: Rotate \bigcirc to select an item on the screen, then press \circlearrowright .

➢Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer.

If you receive a call while using the audio system, the system resumes its operation after ending the call.

Up to 20 speed dial entries can be stored. If there is no entry in the system, Speed Dial is disabled. Speed Dial P. 442

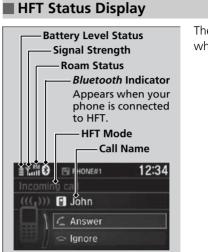
Up to 20 call histories can be stored. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled.

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

The *Bluetooth*[®] word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.



The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.

≥HFT Status Display

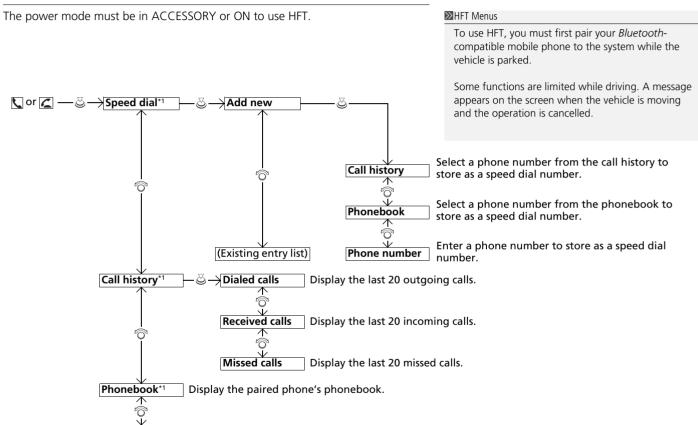
The information that appears on the audio/ information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language. Customized Features P. 392

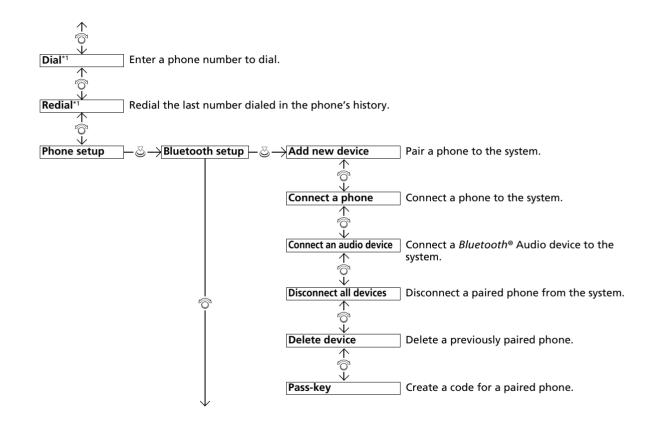
Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

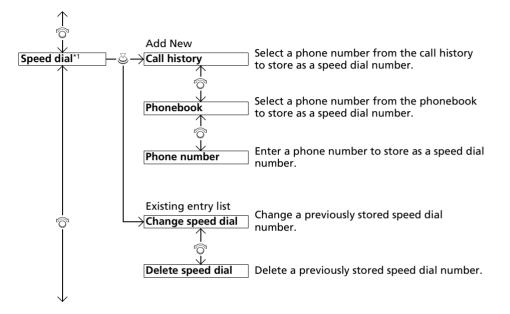
HFT Menus



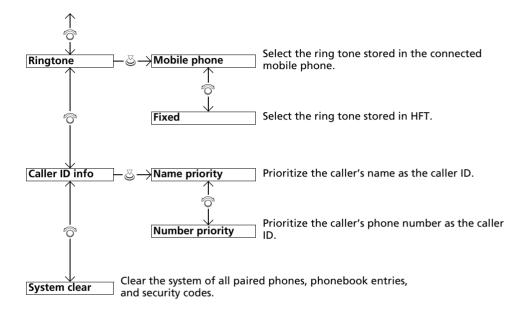
*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



*1: Appears only when a phone is connected to HFT.



Phone Setup



■ To pair a mobile phone (No phone has been paired to the system)

- 1. Press the 🔪 button or the 🔀 button.
- 2. Rotate 🗇 to select Yes, then press 🕹.
- 3. Press 🕹 to select OK.
- **4.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode.
 - ► HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*[®] device.
- 5. When your phone appears on the list, select it by pressing . .
 - If your phone doesn't appear, select Phone not found? and search for Bluetooth[®] devices using your phone. From your phone, select Honda HFT.
- **6.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.
 - This may vary by phone.
- **7.** A notification appears on the screen if pairing is successful.

➢Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to HFT before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to HFT.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within 30 seconds, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

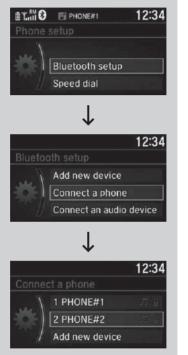
: The phone can be used with HFT.

S: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*[®] Audio.

■ To pair a mobile phone (when a phone has already been paired to the system)



- 1. Press the 🔪 button or the 🔀 button.
- **2.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Yes**, then press \bigotimes .
- 3. Rotate [™] to select Add new device, then press [™].
- 4. Press 🕹 to select OK.
 - ► The screen changes to device list.
- 5. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then press 🖉.
 - HFT automatically searches for a Bluetooth[®] device.
- - If your phone does not appear, select Phone not found? and search for Bluetooth[®] devices using your phone. From your phone, select Honda HFT.
- **7.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by a phone.



To change the currently paired phone

- 1. Press the 🔪 button or the 🌈 button.
- 2. Rotate [™] to select Phone setup, then press [™].
- 3. Rotate "[™] to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press [™].
- **4.** Rotate ⁽→) to select **Connect a phone**, then press ⁽→).
 - ► The screen changes to a device list.

- - HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.



■ To change the pairing code setting

- **1.** Press the 🔪 button or the 🌠 button.
- 2. Rotate [™] to select Phone setup, then press [™] .
- 3. Rotate [™] to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press [™].
- **4.** Rotate [¬]⑦[−] to select **Pass-key**, then press [⊗].

5. Input a new pairing code, then press 🖉.



To delete a paired phone

- **1.** Press the 🔪 button or the 🔀 button.
- 2. Rotate ⁽[¬]) to select Phone setup, then press ⁽_⊂).
- 3. Rotate '[©]' to select **Bluetooth setup**, then press [©].
- 4. Rotate ⑦ to select **Delete device**, then press ♂.
 - ► The screen changes to a device list.
- 5. Rotate ⁽⑦^{*} to select a phone you want to delete, then press ⁽⊗).

Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



- 1. Press the 🔪 button or the 🌠 button.
- 2. Rotate r to select Phone setup, then press S.
- 3. Rotate "[™] to select **Ringtone**, then press [™].
- 4. Rotate 'ô' to select Mobile phone or **Fixed**, then press હ.

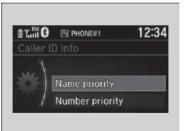
Ring Tone

Mobile phone: For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

Caller's ID Information

You can select a caller's information to be displayed when you have an incoming call.



- **1.** Press the 🔪 button or the 🌠 button.
- 2. Rotate [©] to select Phone setup, then press [©].
- 3. Rotate [™] to select **Caller ID info**, then press [™].
- **4.** Rotate '[©]' to select a mode you want, then press [©].

■Caller's ID Information

Name priority: A caller's name is displayed if it is stored in the phonebook.

Number priority: A caller's phone number is displayed.

To Clear the System

Pairing codes, paired phones, all speed dial entries, all call history data, and all imported phonebook data are erased.

1 T. III 🖸	PHONE#1	12:34
stored in	nformation	No Yes
	\downarrow	
1 T. III 🛛	PHONE#1	12:34
	System clear	r
	nation will be Nould you oceed?	No Yes
	\downarrow	
		12:34
	System clear	r
¥61 mark	ls-Free as been	ок

- 1. Press the 🔪 button or the 🔀 button.
- 2. Rotate [™] to select Phone setup, then press [™].
- 3. Rotate "[™] to select System clear, then press [™] .
- **4.** Rotate \bigcirc to select **Yes**, then press \bigotimes .
- A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ⁽[¬]) to select Yes, then press ⁽⊘).

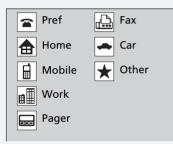
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to HFT.



Mattomatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a person from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



If a name has four or more numbers, ... appears instead of category icons.

On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to HFT.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.

Image: Call history Phonebook

- To store a speed dial number:
- 1. Press the 🔪 button or the 🚄 button.
- 2. Rotate [™] to select Speed dial, then press S.
- 3. Rotate [™] to select **Add new**, then press [™]
- **4.** Rotate ⁽⑦⁺ to select a place to choose a number from, then press ⁽⊗).

From Call history:

Select a number from the call history. From **Phonebook**:

Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.

From Phone number:

Input the number manually.

Speed Dial

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed dial** screen is displayed.





To edit a speed dial

- **1.** Press the \bigcirc button or the \checkmark button.
- 3. Rotate "⁽)" to select Speed dial, then press ⁽⊴).
- 4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
- 5. Rotate 🗇 to select Change speed dial, then press હ.

To delete a speed dial number

- 1. Press the 🔪 button or the 🌈 button.
- 3. Rotate [™] to select Speed dial, then press .
- 4. Select an existing speed dial entry.
- - ► A confirmation message appears on the screen. Rotate ^{(¬}) to select Yes, then press ^{(¬}).

Making a Call

You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.



➢Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.





To make a call using the imported phonebook

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook are automatically imported to HFT.

- 1. Press the 🔪 button or the 🌈 button.
- 2. Rotate [™] to select **Phonebook**, then press [™].
- **3.** The phonebook is stored alphabetically.
- Rotate 🗇 to select the initial, then press 장.
- **4.** Rotate \bigcirc to select a name, then press \bigotimes .
- 5. Rotate "♂ to select a number, then press .
 - Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a phone number

- 1. Press the 🔪 button or the 🔀 button.
- 2. Rotate 🛜 to select Dial, then press 🕹.
- 3. Rotate [™] to select a number, then press [™] .
- **4.** Rotate 🗇 to select **∠**, then press 🕹.
 - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

			■ To make a call usin 1. Press the 🔪 button
1 Tatl	PHONE#1	12:34	2. Rotate 🗇 to select
Redia	ling		Dialing starts auto
<u>(((</u>))) 🖪 John		
	🖙 Hang up		
H			

ing redial

or the 🕻 button.

Redial, then press &. tomatically.

➢To make a call using redial

Press and hold the 🔀 button to redial the last number dialed in your phone's call history.

Ê Tanî Ø	PHONE#1	12:34
Call his	tory	
11-	V Dialed calls	
	V Received calls	
	🔀 Missed calls	

To make a call using the call history Call history is stored by **Dialed calls**, Received calls, and Missed calls.

- **1.** Press the 🔪 button or the 🌈 button.
- 2. Rotate 🗇 to select Call history, then press ු.
- 3. Rotate 👘 to select Dialed calls, Received calls, or Missed calls, then press 공.
- **4.** Rotate 💮 to select a number, then press පු.
 - Dialing starts automatically.

➢To make a call using the call history

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to HFT, and displays the last 20 dialed, received, or missed calls.

Tall O	PHONE#1	12:34
Speed	dial	
MH-	🕼 🖩 John	
	G5 (Add new)	
	G6 (Add new)	

■ To make a call using a speed dial entry

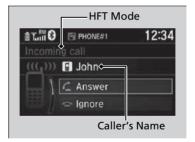
- 1. Press the 📞 button or the 🔀 button.
- 2. Rotate [™] to select Speed dial, then press [™].
- 3. Rotate [™] to select a number, then press [™].
 - Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using a speed dial entry

When any preset button is pressed, the **Speed dial** screen is displayed.

Select **Others** to view another paired phone's speed dial list.

Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the 🗲 button to answer the call.

Press the 😰 button to decline or end the call.

■Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the *button* to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the 🔀 button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the \square and \square buttons. Rotate \bigcirc to select the icon, then press .

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Swap call: Put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call. **Mute:** Mute your voice.

Transfer call: Transfer a call from HFT to your phone.

Dial tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.

- **1.** To view the available options, press the **S** button.
- 2. Rotate [™] to select the option, then press [™] .
 - The check box is checked when Mute is selected. Select Mute again to turn it off.

➢Options During a Call

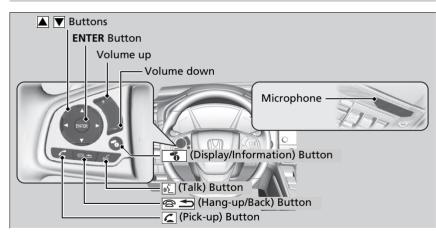
Dial tones: Available on some phones.

Models with Display Audio

The Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

Using HFT

HFT Buttons



Hands-Free Telephone System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth On/Off Status** setting must be **On**. If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, HFT is unavailable.

How to customize P. 400

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphone.
- Press the button when you want to call a number using a stored voice tag. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphone picks up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.
- To change the volume level, select the audio system's **VOL** (Volume) or use the remote audio controls on the steering wheel.

Up to three speed dial entries can be displayed among a total of 20 that can be entered.

Speed Dial P. 462

Up to three previous calls can be displayed at a time among a total of 20 that can be entered. If there is no call history, Call History is disabled. (Pick-up) button: Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

(Hang-up/back) button: Press to end a call, go back to the previous command, or cancel a command.

(Talk) button: Press to access Voice Portal.

buttons: Press to select an item displayed on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

ENTER button: Press to call a number listed in the selected item on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

(Display/information) button: Select and press ENTER to display Speed Dial, Call History, or Phonebook on the phone menu in the driver information interface.

To go to the Phone Menu screen:

- **1.** Select **[** to switch the display to the phone screen.
- 2. Select MENU.

Hands-Free Telephone System

Bluetooth® Wireless Technology

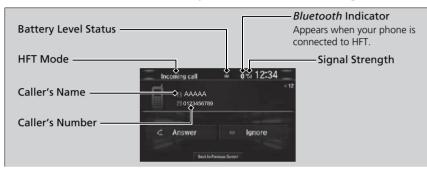
The *Bluetooth*[®] word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a greyed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored speed dial entries with voice tags, phonebook names, or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion. Speed Dial P. 462

➢HFT Status Display

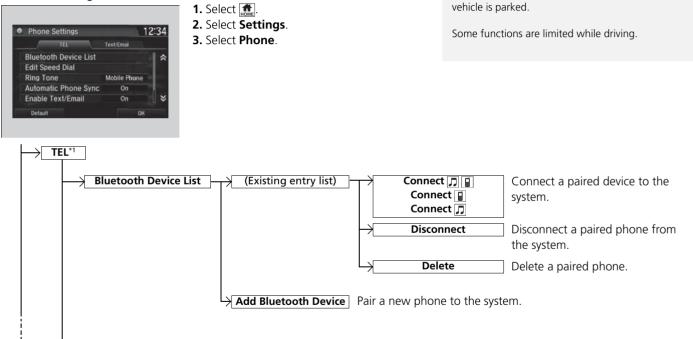
The information that appears on the audio/ information screen varies between phone models.

You can change the system language. How to customize P. 400

HFT Menus

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

Phone Settings screen

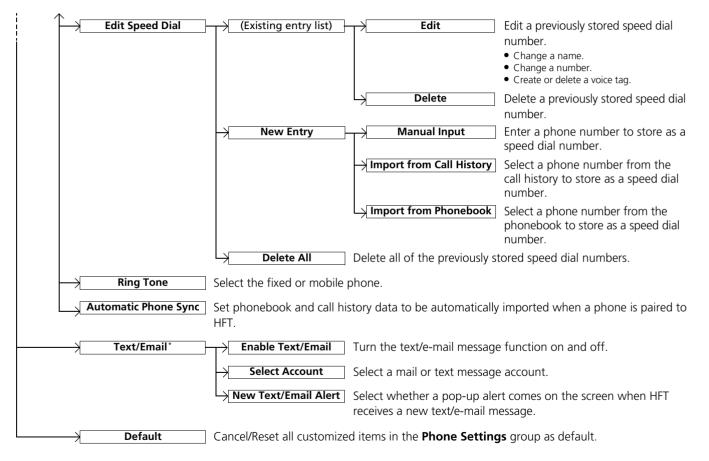


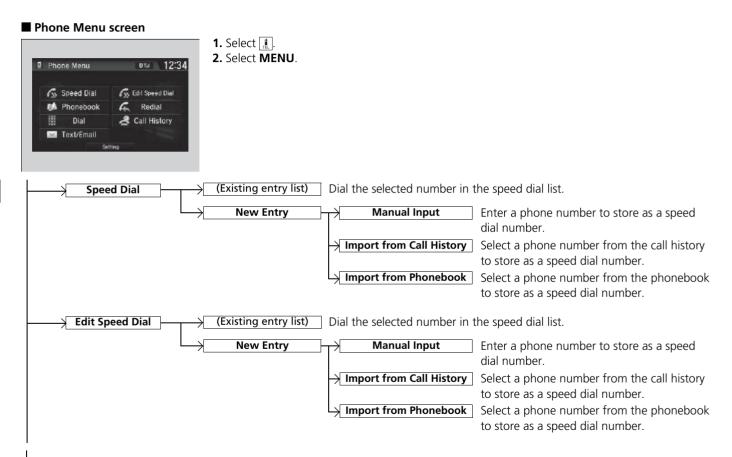
➢HFT Menus

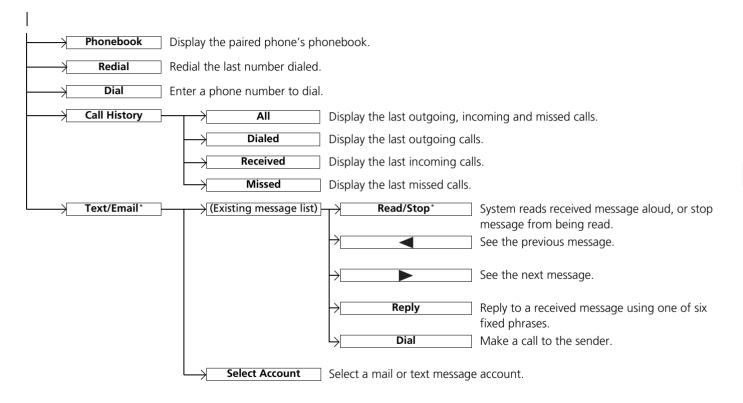
To use HFT, you must first pair your Bluetooth-

compatible mobile phone to the system while the

*1: TEL tab is displayed depending on models.







Phone Setup



To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)

- 1. Select 👖
- 2. Select Yes.
- **3.** Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **Continue**.
 - HFT automatically searches for a Bluetooth[®] device.
- **4.** Select your phone when it appears on the list.
 - If your phone does not appear, you can select **Refresh** to search again.
 - If your phone still does not appear, select Phone Not Found and search for Bluetooth® devices using your phone. From your phone, search for Honda HFT.
- **5.** The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
 - Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match. This may vary by phone.

➢Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.
- If your phone is not ready for pairing or not found by the system within three minutes, the system will time out and return to idle.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or two icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

: The phone can be used with HFT.

T: The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*[®] Audio.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay, pairing of additional *Bluetooth*-compatible devices is unavailable and **Add Bluetooth Device** is greyed out from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

Phone Settings		12:34
Bluetooth Device List		
Edit Speed Dial		
Ring Tone	Mobile Phone	
Automatic Phone Sync	On	
Default		ĸ

Bluetooth / Wi-Fi		12:34
Bluetooth	Wi-Fi	
Bluetooth On/Off Status Bluetooth Device List	On	^
Edit Pairing Code Wi-Fi On/Off Status	011	
Default	ox	
Edit Pairing Code	V	12:34
Random	Fixed	

To change the currently paired phone

- **1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen. **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 452
- 2. Select Bluetooth Device List.
- 3. Select a phone to connect.
 - HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
- 4. Select Connect , Connect , or Connect .

■ To change the pairing code setting

- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select Bluetooth / Wi-Fi.
- 4. Select the **Bluetooth** tab.
- 5. Select Edit Pairing Code.

6. Select Random or Fixed.

≥ To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **Add Bluetooth Device** from the **Bluetooth Device List** screen.

Image To change the pairing code setting Image and Image and the pairing code setting Image and Image and the pairing code setting Image and Ima

The default pairing code is **0000** until you change the setting.

To create your own, select **Fixed**, and delete the current code, then enter a new one.

For a randomly generated pairing code each time you pair a phone, select **Random**.



To delete a paired phone

- **1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen. **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 452
- 2. Select Bluetooth Device List.
- **3.** Select a phone you want to delete.

4. Select Delete.

5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options*

Phone Settings	12:34
Ring Tone	
Automatic Phone Sync	0n
Enable Text/Email	
Select Account	Off
and the second se	

Phone Settings	12:3
Rins Tone	
Automatic Prione Syne	On
Sellici Account	Off
New Text/Email Alert	

- To turn on or off the text/e-mail message function
- **1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen. **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 452
- 2. Select the Text/Email tab, then Enable Text/Email.
 - ► A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 3. Select On or Off.
- To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice
- 1. Go to the Phone Settings screen. ▶ Phone Settings screen P. 452
- 2. Select the Text/Email tab, then New Text/ Email Alert.

► A pop-up menu appears on the screen.

3. Select On or Off.

To Set Up Text/E-mail Message Options*

To use the text/e-mail message function, it may be necessary to set up on your phone.

Some text/e-mail message features may not be available depending on a mobile phone.

Image: To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice Image: Description: The text of tex of text of tex of text of text of text of tex of tex of

On: A pop-up notification comes on every time you receive a new message.

Off: The message you receive is stored in the system without notification.

Ring Tone

You can change the ring tone setting.



- **1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen.
 - Phone Settings screen P. 452
- 2. Select Ring Tone.
- 3. Select Fixed or Mobile Phone.

➢Ring Tone

Fixed: The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers. **Mobile Phone**: For certain connected phones, the ring tone stored in the phone sounds from the speakers.

Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

🕈 Pho	meou	OR.			12	
< A8	¢				MNO	>
AAA					8	
BBB					8	

When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

12:34 Phone Settings Bluetooth Device List Edit Speed Dial **Ring Tone** Mobile Phone Automatic Phone Sync On Detaul 12:34 Automatic Phone Sync. Automatic Phone Synchronization On On: Phonebook and call history will be imported. Off: Phonebook and

call history will not be

- Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting
- **1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen. **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 452
- 2. Select Automatic Phone Sync.

3. Select **On** or **Off**

Mautomatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and Call History

When you select a name from the list in the cellular phonebook, you can see up to three category icons. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

Speed Dial

Up to 20 speed dial numbers can be stored per phone.





To store a speed dial number:

- **1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen. **Phone Menu screen** P 454
- 2. Select Speed Dial.
- 3. Select New Entry.

From Import from Call History:

Select a number from the call history. From **Manual Input**:

▶ Input the number manually.

From Import from Phonebook:

- Select a number from the connected mobile phone's imported phonebook.
- **4.** When the speed dial is successfully stored, you are asked to create a voice tag for the number. Select **Yes** or **No**.
- 5. Select **Record**, or use the <u>₩</u> button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

Speed Dial

When a voice tag is stored, press the \fbox button to call the number using the voice tag. Say the voice tag name.



- To add a voice tag to a stored speed dial number
- 1. Go to the Phone Settings screen. ▶ Phone Settings screen P. 452
- 2. Select Edit Speed Dial.
- **3.** Select an existing speed dial entry.
 - From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
- 4. Select Voice Tag.
 - From the pop-up menu, select **Record**.
- 5. Select **Record**, or use the <u>₩</u> button and follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.

Speed Dial

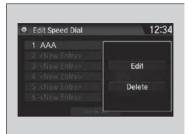
Avoid using duplicate voice tags.

Avoid using "home" as a voice tag.

It is easier for the system to recognise a longer name. For example, use "John Smith" instead of "John."

Edit Speed Dial	r	12:34
	_	Play
	12	Record
Voice Tag		Clear

- To delete a voice tag
- 1. Go to the Phone Settings screen.
- Phone Settings screen P. 452
- 2. Select Edit Speed Dial.
- 3. Select an existing speed dial entry.
- From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
- 4. Select Voice Tag.
 - From the pop-up menu, select **Clear**.
- **5.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.



To edit a speed dial

- **1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen. **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 452
- 2. Select Edit Speed Dial.
- **3.** Select an existing speed dial entry.
- From the pop-up menu, select **Edit**.
- 4. Select a setting you want.

To delete a speed dial

- 1. Go to the Phone Settings screen.
 - Phone Settings screen P. 452
- 2. Select Edit Speed Dial.
- **3.** Select an existing speed dial entry.
 - From the pop-up menu, select **Delete**.
- **4.** A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

Phonebook Phonetic Modification*

Add phonetic modifications or a new voice tag to the phone's contact name so that it is easier for HFT to recognize voice commands.



To add a new voice tag

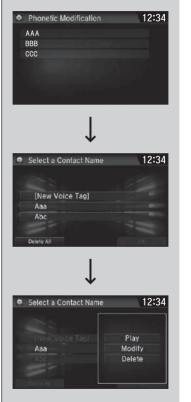
- 1. Select 💼
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the Voice Recog. tab.
- 5. Select Phonebook Phonetic Modification.
- **6.** Select the phone you want to add phonetic modification to.

Phonebook Phonetic Modification*

You can store up to 20 phonetic modification items.



- 7. Select New Voice Tag.
- **8.** Select a contact name you want to add to.
 - The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 9. Select Modify.
- **10.** Using **Record** or the <u>₩</u> button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
- **11.** You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.



- To modify a voice tag
- 1. Select 🚮.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the Voice Recog. tab.
- 5. Select Phonebook Phonetic Modification.
- **6.** Select the phone you want to modify phonetic modification.
- **7.** Select a contact name you want to modify.
 - The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 8. Select Modify.
- **9.** Using **Record** or the <u>5</u> button, follow the prompts to complete the voice tag.
- **10.** You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **OK**.

➢Phonebook Phonetic Modification *

You can only modify or delete contact names for the currently connected phone.



To delete a modified voice tag

- 1. Select 💼.
- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the Voice Recog. tab.
- 5. Select Phonebook Phonetic Modification.
- **6.** Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
- **7.** Select a contact name you want to delete.
 - ▶ The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 8. Select Delete.
 - The selected contact name has been selected.
- 9. Select OK.

■ To delete all modified voice tags

1. Select 🚮.

12:34

12:34

- 2. Select Settings.
- 3. Select System.
- 4. Select the Voice Recog. tab.
- 5. Select Phonebook Phonetic Modification.
- **6.** Select the phone you want to delete phonetic modification.
 - ► The contact name list appears.
- 7. Select Delete All.
- 8. You will receive a confirmation message on the screen, then select **Yes**.

Making a Call

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from most screens.

Press the \underline{W} button and say the voice tag name.

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls can be made only from Apple CarPlay.

Making a Call

Select a Contact Name

[New Voice Tag] Aaa Abc

Phonetic Modification

AAA

BBB

CCC



You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, speed dial entries, or redial.





To make a call using the imported phonebook

- 1. Select 👔
- 2. Select Phonebook.
- 3. Select a name.
 - You can also search by letter. Select Search
 - Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering name, if multiple numbers exist select a number.
 - You can also swipe up or down to scroll through the list of contacts alphabetically on the steering wheel.

Audio Remote Controls P. 290

- 4. Select a number.
 - Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using the imported phonebook

You can also select **Phonebook** on the **Phone Menu** screen.

8	Dial		014	12:34
				- Atlant
		2 ABC	3 DEF	
	4 614	5 .//0.	6 MND	
	7 Pars	8 TUN	9 WXYZ	-97
	* #	0+		6

Phone Menu	014 12
🔊 Speed Dial	💪 Edit Speed Dial
📫 Phonebook	redial
III Dial	all History 🍣
Se	tling

12:34			Call History		
	Missed	Received	Dialed	All	
1 %	2:04	08.03		Aaa	
	5:23	08.02		Aaa	
		06:28		Aaa	
	8:13	06.17		YYYY	
	8:12	06,17		YYYY	14
2	8:04	0617		YYYY	

■ To make a call using a phone number

- **1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen. **▶ Phone Menu screen** P. 454
- 2. Select Dial.
- 3. Select a number.
- Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
- 4. Select 🚄
 - Dialing starts automatically.

To make a call using redial

- **1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.
- 2. Select Redial.
 - Dialing starts automatically.

- To make a call using the Call History Call history is stored by All, Dialed, Received, and Missed.
- **1.** Go to the **Phone Menu** screen. **Phone Menu screen** P. 454
- 2. Select Call History.
- 3. Select All, Dialed, Received, or Missed.
- 4. Select a number.
- ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

■To make a call using the Call History

The call history displays the last 20 all, dialed, received, or missed calls.

(Appears only when a phone is connected to the system.)

12:34	014	Speed Dial
*	0123456789	n Aaa
		<new entry=""></new>
×		<new entry=""></new>

To make a call using a Speed Dial entry

- 1. Go to the Phone Menu screen. ⇒ Phone Menu screen P. 454
- 2. Select Speed Dial.
- 3. Select a number.
 - Dialing starts automatically.

➢To make a call using a Speed Dial entry ■

When a voice tag is stored, press the $\fbox{}$ button to call the number using the voice tag. Speed Dial P. 462

Any voice-tagged speed dial entry can be dialed by voice from any screen. Press the $\underline{\texttt{sc}}$ button and follow the prompts.

Receiving a Call

Incoming call	o ta 12:34	
ΑΑΑΑΑ		101
01234567890		
< Answer	Ignore	

When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming call** screen appears.

Press the 🖉 button to answer the call. Press the 🔄 button to decline or end the call.

Receiving a Call

Call Waiting

Press the *button* to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the C button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the result button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the 🔀 and 🗟 🕤 buttons.

Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

Mute: Mute your voice.

Transfer: Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

Touch Tones: Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menudriven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

The mute icon appears when Mute is selected. Select Mute again to turn it off.

➢Options During a Call

Touch Tones: Available on some phones.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

Receiving a Text/E-mail Message^{*, *1}

HFT can display newly received text or e-mail messages as well as 20 of the most recently received messages on a linked mobile phone. Each received message can be read aloud and replied to using a fixed common phrase.



- **1.** A pop-up appears and notifies you of a new text message or e-mail.
- 2. Select **Read** to listen to the message.
 - The text or e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading out the message.
- **3.** To discontinue the message read-out, select **Stop**.

Receiving a Text/E-mail Message *, *1

The system does not display any received messages while you are driving. You can only hear them read aloud.

The system can only receive massages that are sent as text (SMS) messages. Messages sent using data services will not be displayed in the list.

With some phones, you may be able to display up to 20 most recent text and e-mail messages.

Country or local laws may limit your use of the HFT text message/e-mail feature. Only use the text/e-mail message feature when conditions allow you to do so safely.

When you receive a text or e-mail message for the first time since the phone is paired to HFT, you are asked to turn the **New Text/Email Alert** setting to **On**.

To turn on or off the text/e-mail message notice P. 459

MENU	SOURCE		om 12:34
H _	-		Phonebook
	Would you each time message o	you receiv	e a new
	Yes		No
<ne< td=""><td>ew Entry></td><td></td><td></td></ne<>	ew Entry>		

*1: Message will not be read out depending on the language.

Selecting a Mail Account*

If a paired phone has text message or mail accounts, you can select one of them to be active and receive notifications.



- **1.** Go to the **Phone Settings** screen. **▶ Phone Settings screen** P. 452
- 2. Select the Text/Email tab, then Select Account.
 - A pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- **3.** Select **Text Messages** or an e-mail message account you want.

Selecting a Mail Account*

You can also select a mail account from the folder list screen or the message list screen.

∄ Text messages	ot 12:	34
ΑΑΑΑΑ	May 12	*
BBBBB	May 12	
CCCCC	May 10	
DDDDD	May 7	
EEEEE	Apr. 15	
FFFFF	Mar. 26	≈
Select Acc	auna	
	oum	
t		
t ↓		t
t Select Account	Select	-
Ļ	Select Accoun	-
Ļ	Select Accoun	-
Ļ	Select Accoun	-
Select Account	Select Accoun	-
Select Account	Select Accoun	-
Select Account	Select Accoun	-

You can only receive notifications from one text message or mail account at a time.

Displaying Messages *, *1



Displaying text messages

1. Go to the **Phone Menu** screen.

- 2. Select Text/Email
 - Select account if necessary.
- 3. Select a message.
 - The text message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

Displaying Messages *, *1

If you delete a message on the phone, the message is also deleted in the system. If you send a message from the system, the message goes to your phone's outbox.

To see the previous or next message, select () (previous) or () (next) on the message screen.

*1: Message will not be read out depending on the language.

Folder List			
SMS/MMS	-	OTA	12:34
■ inbox draft delete outbox sent	Select Account		A. 11.19
Message Lis	t ↑		
🛯 inbox		0Td	12:34
AAAAA BBBBB CCCCC DDDDD EEEEE	No subject No subject No subject No subject No subject	Aug, 19 Aug, 19 Aug, 19 Aug, 19	
FFFFF	No subject Select Account	July 14	- ∪ ≯
E-mail Message			
Text Message	s	OTA	12:34
Aug. 19 10:43	1/20 AM	•	
ААААА			

Displaying e-mail messages

- 1. Go to the Phone Menu screen. ▶ Phone Menu screen P. 454
- 2. Select Text/Email.
 - Select **Select Account** if necessary.
- 3. Select a folder.
- 4. Select a message.
 - The e-mail message is displayed. The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.





Read or Stop reading a message

- **1.** Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
 - The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

Displaying Messages*, *1 P. 476

 Select Stop to stop reading. Select Read again to start reading the message from the beginning.

Reply to a message

- **1.** Go to the text or e-mail message screen.
 - ► The system automatically starts reading the message aloud.

Displaying Messages *, *1 P. 476

- 2. Select Reply.
- 3. Select the reply message.
 - ► The pop-up menu appears on the screen.
- 4. Select Send to send the message.
 - Message sent appears on the screen when the reply message was successfully sent.

Reply to a message

The available fixed reply messages are as follows:

- Talk to you later, I'm driving.
- I'm on my way.
- I'm running late.
- ОК
- Yes
- No

You cannot add, edit, or delete reply messages.

Only certain phones receive and send messages when paired and connected. For a list of compatible phones ask a dealer.



Making a call to a sender

- **1.** Go to the text message screen.
- 2. Select Dial.

Automatic emergency call



If your vehicle is involved in a collision, the SRS unit in the vehicle will attempt to connect to a Public Safety Answering Point (PSAP) operator. Once a connection is established, various information about the vehicle will be sent to a PSAP operator with whom you will be able to speak. This information includes:

- Vehicle identification number (VIN)
- Type of vehicle (passenger vehicle or light-weight commercial vehicle)
- Type of energy stored for vehicle propulsion (gasoline/diesel/CNG/LPG/electricity/ hydrogen)
- Last three locations of the vehicle
- Direction of travel
- Triggering mode (automatic or manual)
- Timestamp

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

When the power mode is set to ON. The eCall indicator lights up in green for 1 second, then in red for 1 second.

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Your vehicle is equipped with the 112-based eCall service system.

The 112-based eCall service is a public service of general interest and is accessible free of charge.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is activated when the power mode is set to ON. In the event of a collision, the system will determine the degree of the impact based on information collected from the onboard sensors and, depending on the severity of the collision, will initiate the emergency call.

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system can also be triggered manually, if needed.

Manual emergency call P. 482

Any processing of personal data through the 112based eCall in-vehicle system shall comply with the personal data protection rules provided for in Directives 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC) and 2002/58/EC, and in particular, shall be based on the necessity to protect the vital interests of the individuals in accordance with Article 7(d) of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Processing of such data is strictly limited to the purpose of for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

If the eCall system is working properly, the indicator will light up in green.

- Green: eCall system is ready.
- Blinking in green: eCall system is connected and making an eCall to a PSAP operator.
- Repeating a pattern of short flashes of the red light: The eCall system has failed to connect to an operator. The eCall indicator will continue this pattern for 30 seconds, then it will light up in green.

If the 112-based eCall system is disabled in the event of a critical system failure, the following warning will be given to the occupants of the vehicle:

- Red or blacked out: A problem with the eCall system has occurred. If the indicator stays red or blacked out even after you have restarted the vehicle, have the system check by a dealer.
- Blinking in red: The level of the backup battery is too low. While the power is in ON, the battery undergoes recharging. Once the battery has been recharged to a certain level, the eCall indicator lights up in green.

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Recipients of data processed by the 112-based eCall in-vehicle system are the relevant public safety answering points designated by the respective public authorities of the country in which they are located and are the first to receive and for which the single European emergency number 112 is designated.

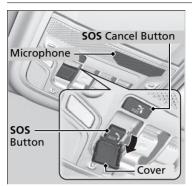
Your vehicle may NOT be able to connect to a PSAP operator if:

- both the 12V battery and backup battery are too low.
- your vehicle is in an area without adequate cellular coverage.
- There is a problem with the eCall system itself or its peripheral equipment such as the microphone or speakers.

The backup battery is designed to operate for at least 3 years, after which it may need to be replaced.

The backup battery is not available for direct purchase. For replacement, visit a dealer.

Manual emergency call



If you need to make an emergency call, you can establish a connection manually: Press the **SOS** button and hold it for more than 0.5 seconds.

To cancel a call, press the **SOS** cancel button for more than 0.5 seconds, before 5 seconds has elapsed since the **SOS** button was pressed.

Manual emergency call

Do NOT press the button while you are driving. If you need to contact an operator, park the vehicle in a safe place before you make a call.

If the eCall system at first fails to connect to a PSAP operator, it will try again until a connection is established. However, if 2 minutes have elapsed since the first try was attempted, the system will no longer attempt to establish a connection.

The **SOS** cancel button does not cancel a call once the system is connected to an operator.

The **SOS** button is protected by a cover. Open the cover to gain access.

When an emergency call is initiated, the vehicle speakers are disabled so that you can hear the operator.

Israeli models

מוצר: נתונים תקשורת מודול

DENSO : סימן רשום

ארץ ייצור : ראה מוצר

OGEY02 : דגם

שנת ייצור : ראה מוצר

Name of Importer: Mayer's Cars and Trucks Co. Ltd.

Importer's Address: 17 Itzhak sade St. Tel Aviv 677775, Israel

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Data privacy

The 112-based eCall in-vehicle system is designed to ensure that:

- Data contained in the system memory is not available outside the system before an eCall is triggered.
- It is not traceable or subject to any constant tracking during its normal operation status.
- Data in the internal memory of the system is automatically and continuously removed.

For the system to function normally, the vehicle location data is constantly overwritten in the internal memory of the system so that the last three locations of the vehicle are kept up-to-date.

The log of activity data in the 112-based eCall invehicle system is kept for no longer than necessary for attaining the purpose of handling the emergency eCall and in any case not beyond 13 hours from the moment an emergency eCall was initiated.

Emergency Call (eCall)*

Owner's rights

The data subject (the vehicle's owner) has a right of access to data and as appropriate to request the rectification, erasure or blocking of data, concerning him or her, the processing of which does not comply with the provisions of Directive 95/46/EC (replaced by 2016/679/EC).

Any third parties to whom the data have been disclosed have to be notified of such rectification, erasure or blocking carried out in compliance with this Directive, unless it proves impossible or involves a disproportionate effort.

The data subject has a right to complain to the competent data protection authority if he or she considers that his or her rights have been infringed as a result of the processing of his or her personal data.

Honda eCall Service Information:

If you have any questions about eCall, contact the office relevant to the country in which you reside. See the service booklet for list of offices.

Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.

Before Driving	486
Towing a Trailer	
Off-road Guidelines	496
When Driving	
Turning on the Power	498
Precautions While Driving	501
Transmission	503
Shifting	504
SPORT Mode	
Deceleration Paddle Selector	511
ECON Mode	514
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	515
Adjustable Speed Limiter	516
Intelligent Speed Limiter	520
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System	527

Agile Handling Assist 529 Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control 530 System* 531 Deflation Warning System 531 Blind spot information System* 537 High Voltage Battery 537 Adjusting Headlight Distribution 538) 1 7
Honda Sensing)
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	2

Front Sensor Camera	. 592
Radar Sensor	. 594
Braking	
Brake System	. 595
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	. 601
Brake Assist System	. 602
Emergency Stop Signal	. 603
Parking Your Vehicle	
When Stopped	. 604
Parking Sensor System *	
Cross Traffic Monitor *	. 611
Multi-View Rear Camera*	. 616
Refueling	. 618
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions	. 620

Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
 - Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
 - Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
 - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
 If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
 - Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
 Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 665
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
 There are blind spots from the inside.

Exterior Checks

NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
 - Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.

Load Limit P. 489

- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
 - They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat*.
 - An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
 They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
 - Adjust the head restraint, too.
 - Adjusting the Seats P. 248
 - Adjusting the Front Head Restraints P. 254
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly for your driving.
 - Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
 - Adjusting the Mirrors P. 244
 - Adjusting the Steering Wheel P. 243

■Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
 - ► They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.

Fastening a Seat Belt P. 55

- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
 - Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
 - Indicators P. 100

Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

Specifications P. 726

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

Specifications P. 726

≫Load Limit

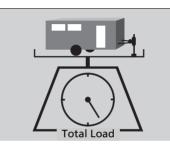
Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Towing Preparation

Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the power system and drivetrain.

➢Towing Load Limits

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and then measure the tongue load with an appropriate scale or tongue gauge or estimate it based on luggage distribution.

Refer to the trailer owner's manual for additional information.

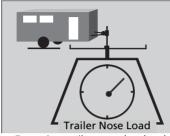
Break-in Period

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km (625 miles).

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle and trailer weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and specified load limit.

Specifications P. 726



Trailer nose load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 100 kg (220 lbs). This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 750 kg (1,653 lbs), the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

➢Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

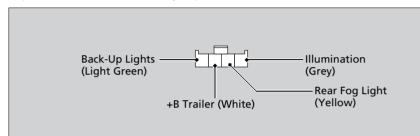
Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment.

Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.



We recommend that you have a dealer install a Honda wiring harness and converter. They are designed for your vehicle.

➢Towing Equipment and Accessories

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
 Towing Load Limits P. 490
- Securely attach the towbar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressures of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.

Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer must not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph).

Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill of less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the **D** position when towing a trailer on level roads.

Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

Driving in Hilly Terrain

• Closely watch your high temperature indicator. If the indicator remains on, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.

General Information

Your vehicle has been designed primarily for use on pavement, however, its higher ground clearance allows you to occasionally travel on unpaved roads. It is not designed for trail-blazing, or other challenging off-road activities.

If you decide to drive on unpaved roads, you will find that it requires somewhat different driving skills and that your vehicle will handle somewhat differently than it does on pavement. Pay attention to the precautions and tips in this section, and get acquainted with your vehicle before leaving the pavement.

Important Safety Precautions

To avoid loss of control or rollover, be sure to follow all precautions and recommendations:

- Be sure to store luggage properly and do not exceed your luggage load limits.
 Load Limit P. 489
- Whenever you drive, make sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts.
- Keep your speed low, and never go faster than the conditions allow.
- It's up to you to continually assess the situation and drive within the limits.

➢Off-road Guidelines

Improperly operating this vehicle on or off pavement can cause an accident or rollover in which you and your passengers could be seriously injured or killed.

- Follow all instructions and guidelines in this owner's manual.
- Keep your speed low, and don't drive faster than conditions permit.

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Important Handling Information P. 46
 Precautions While Driving P. 501

Avoiding Trouble

- **Check Out Your Vehicle** before you leave the pavement and make sure that all scheduled maintenance has been completed. Pay special attention to the condition of the tyres, and check the tyre pressures.
- **Remember** the route you choose presents limits (too steep or bumpy), you have limits (driving skill and comfort), and your vehicle has limits (traction, stability, and power). Failing to recognise these limits will likely put you and your passengers in a hazardous situation.
- Accelerating and Braking should be done slowly and gradually. Trying to start or stop too fast can cause a loss of traction and you could lose control.
- Avoiding Obstacles and Debris in the road reduces the likelihood of a rollover or damage to your suspension or other components.
- Driving on Slopes increases your risk of a rollover, particularly if you attempt to drive across a slope that is too steep. Going straight or down a slope is usually the safest. If you can't clearly see all conditions or obstacles on a slope, walk it before you drive it. If there is any doubt whether you can safely pass, don't try it. Find another route. If you get stuck when climbing, do not try to turn around. Back down slowly following the same route you took up the hill.
- **Crossing a Stream** Avoid driving through deep water. If you encounter water in your route (a small stream or large puddle, for example), evaluate it carefully before going ahead. Make sure it is shallow, flowing slowly, and has firm ground underneath. If you are not sure of the depth or the ground, turn around and find another route. Driving through deep water can also damage your vehicle. The water can get into the transmission and differential, diluting the lubricant and causing an eventual failure. It can also wash the grease out of the wheel bearings.
- If You Get Stuck, carefully go in the direction that you think will get you unstuck. Do not spin the tyres as this will only make things worse and could damage the transmission. If you are unable to free yourself, your vehicle will need to be towed. Front and rear tow hooks are provided for this purpose.

Turning on the Power



Brake Pedal

 Make sure the parking brake is applied.
 The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on for 15 seconds when you pull up the electric parking brake switch

2. Depress the brake pedal.

■Turning on the Power

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the power system.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When turning on the power system in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce 12-volt battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded device is used, the power system does not activate.

Immobilizer System P. 208

When you set the power mode to ON, you may feel as if the brake pedal is sinking down. This is normal.



- **3.** Press the **POWER** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.
- 4. Check the 🚘 (Ready) indicator.
 - ► Keep depressing the brake pedal until the 🚖 indicator comes on.
 - ► The 📻 indicator comes on when the power system is on and you can start driving.
 - If the outside temperature is extremely low, you cannot drive until conditions are improved. In this case, the _____ indicator does not come on, as well as a warning message appears on the driver information interface.
 Indicators P. 100

■Turning on the Power

Bring the keyless remote close to the **POWER** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

► If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 702

The power system may not activate if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **POWER** button to start the power system.

If the power system does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before trying again.

The engine may not run when the vehicle is ready for driving.

You can start driving with the 🚘 indicator on.

If you press the **POWER** button while depressing the brake pedal with the findicator on, the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF and you cannot start driving.

Ready Indicator P. 103

Stopping the Power System

You can turn the power system off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put the transmission into **P**.

2. Press the **POWER** button.

Starting to Drive

- 1. Depress the brake pedal and press the **POWER** button simultaneously.
- Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, check that the a indicator is on, then press the D button. Select R when reversing.
- **3.** With the electric parking brake applied, release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal.
 - ▶ Make sure the parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.
 - Parking Brake P. 595
 - If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message P. 715

Starting to Drive

The power system is turned off when the transmission position is changed from [P] before the **POWER** button is pressed. Follow the step 1 when starting to drive.

You can also release the parking brake by pressing the electric parking brake switch while depressing the brake pedal. When facing downhill, you can start your vehicle more smoothly by manually releasing it with the electric parking brake switch than by releasing it with the accelerator pedal.

As a hybrid vehicle, the sounds and vibrations from the engine may be absent even though the vehicle is ready for driving. It also makes you fail to recognize that you can start.

Make sure to check if the indicator is on before you start to drive.

➢Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and does not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator. Put the transmission into \boxed{D} when facing uphill, or \boxed{R} when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

Precautions While Driving

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles. To prevent rollovers or loss of control:

- Take corners at slower speeds than you would with a passenger vehicle.
- Avoid sharp turns and abrupt manoeuvres whenever possible.
- Do not modify your vehicle in any way that you would raise the centre of gravity.
- Do not carry heavy luggage on the roof*.

🔳 In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

Precautions While Driving

CAUTION: Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

NOTICE

Do not select a shift button while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored.

Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the power system will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not press the **N** button, as you will lose regenerative braking (and acceleration) performance.

📕 In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not driving in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the power system or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

Precautions While Driving

During the first 1,000 km (625 miles) of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the power system or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km (200 miles). You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

Driving Guidelines for Your Utility Vehicle

Failure to operate your vehicle correctly might result in a crash or a rollover.

Important Handling Information P. 46
 Precautions While Driving P. 501

≫In Rain

Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden regenerative braking can cause the tyres to skid.

Transmission

Creeping

As with a conventional petrol-powered vehicle with an automatic transmission, this vehicle will creep.

Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the vehicle to react similar to an automatic transmission vehicle, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

Ρ

R

Ν

Shift button positions



Park

Used when parking or turning the power on or off. Transmission is locked.

Reverse

Used when reversing

Neutral Transmission is not locked

- Drive
- Used for normal driving.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used temporarily.
- The deceleration paddle selector can be used when SPORT mode is on.

≫Shifting

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

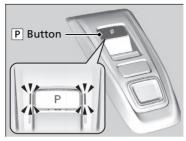
Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that \underline{P} is shown on the shift position Indicator.

To prevent malfunction and unintended engagement:

- Do not spill any liquids on or around shift buttons.
- Do not place or drop any objects on or around shift buttons.
- Do not let passengers or children operate the shift buttons.

While the High Voltage battery level is full, or the High Voltage battery temperature is low, regenerative braking may become less effective.

■ P (park) button



The shift position changes to \boxed{P} when you press the \boxed{P} button while the vehicle is parked with the power mode in ON. The indicators on the sides of the \boxed{P} button come on.

≫Shifting

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when you depress the accelerator pedal with the shift position in $[\mathbf{N}]$.

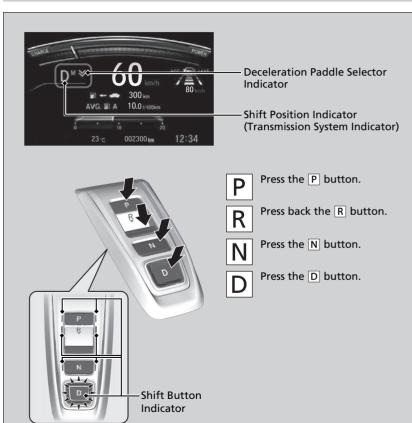
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 123

Change the shift position to D or \mathbb{R} with the brake pedal depressed.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30° C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

You may occasionally find that it takes longer than usual for the vehicle to start moving when you select $[\mathbf{R}]$, release the brake pedal, and/or depress the accelerator pedal. This may occur when the High Voltage battery level is extremely low, and does not indicate a vehicle malfunction.

Shift Operation



Shift Operation

NOTICE

When you change \boxed{D} to \boxed{R} and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift position before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator and the shift button indicator to check the shift position before selecting a shift button.

If the indicator of the currently selected shift position, or the shift position indicator is blinking simultaneously, there is a problem with the transmission.

Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The beeper sounds once when you change to **ℝ**. **≥** Customized Features P. 161, 400

When opening the driver's door

If you open the driver's door under the following conditions, the shift position automatically changes to $[\mathbf{P}]$.

- The vehicle is in stationary with the power mode in ON, or moving at 2 km/h (1 mph) or slower.
- The transmission is in other than **P**.
- You have unfastened the driver side seat belt.
 - ▶ If you manually change the shift position from P with the brake pedal depressed, the shift position will automatically return to P once you release the brake pedal.

When turning off the power mode

If you turn the power system off while the vehicle is stationary, and the transmission is in other than $[\mathbf{P}]$, the shift position automatically changes to $[\mathbf{P}]$.

When opening the driver's door

While the system is designed to automatically change the shift position to ℙ under the described conditions, in the interest of safety you should always select ℙ before opening the driver's door. Make sure to park the vehicle in a safe place. ♥ When Stopped P. 604

If you want to drive the vehicle after the shift position has automatically changed to P under the described conditions, close the door, fasten the seat belt, depress the brake pedal, then change the shift position.

If you leave the vehicle, turn off the power system and lock the doors.

■ If you want to keep the transmission in N position (car wash mode)

With the power system on:

- **1.** Press and hold the brake pedal.
- 2. Select N.
- **3.** Within five seconds, press the **POWER** button. The power mode changes to ACCESSORY.
 - This puts the vehicle in car wash mode which must be used when your vehicle is pulled through a conveyor type automatic car wash where you or an attendant do not remain in the vehicle.
 - The shift position remains in \boxed{N} with the power mode in ACCESSORY for 15 minutes, then, it automatically changes to \boxed{P} .

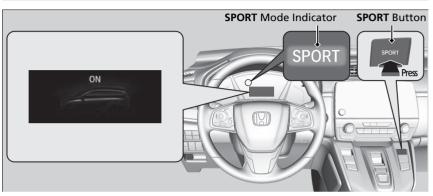
Manually changing to **P** cancels ACCESSORY mode.

Restriction on selecting a shift position

You cannot select a shift position under certain circumstances that may lead to a crash.

When the transmission is in:	1. Under the circumstances of that:	2. You cannot select:	3. The shift position remains in/changes to:	How to change the shift position
P	The brake pedal is not depressed.	Other shift position	Ρ	Release the accelerator pedal and depress the brake pedal.
	The accelerator pedal is depressed.			
Ν	The vehicle is moving at low speed without the brake pedal depressed.		N	
	The vehicle is moving at low speed with the accelerator pedal depressed.			
N or D	The vehicle is moving forward.	R		Park your vehicle in a safe place.
R or N	The vehicle is moving backward.	D		
R, N or D	The vehicle is moving.	Ρ		
P or N	The 🚍 indicator is not on.	A shift position other than $[\mathbf{P}]$ or $[\mathbf{N}]$	P or N	Make sure that the indicator comes on.

SPORT Mode



To turn the SPORT mode on and off, press the **SPORT** button.

The SPORT mode increases engine performance.

This mode is suitable for driving on hills or through curves on mountain roads.

The SPORT mode is turned off every time you turn on the power system, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

Decrease

Increase

Deceleration

Stage

When you release the accelerator pedal, you can control the rate of deceleration without removing your hands from the steering wheel. Using the deceleration paddle selector situated on the steering wheel, you can sequentially shift through four stages of deceleration.

When descending a hill, you can use the deceleration paddle selector to help maintain the rate of deceleration, thereby allowing you to keep a safe distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead as well as utilize regenerative braking.

The default deceleration stage is $\boxed{}$. Each paddle selector operation makes a single stage deceleration change.

The deceleration stage may not change if you pull the paddle selector continuously.

Deceleration Paddle Selector

Rapidly increasing the deceleration rate by quickly shifting the deceleration paddle can cause the tyres to skid, resulting in a crash that could injure or kill someone.

Always maintain a reasonable rate of deceleration.

If you are descending a hill when you select stage $\[mathbb{w}]$, the vehicle may enter stage $\[mathbb{w}]$.

If you pull back right and left paddle selector at the same time, the deceleration stage may not change.

To select the different stages of deceleration:

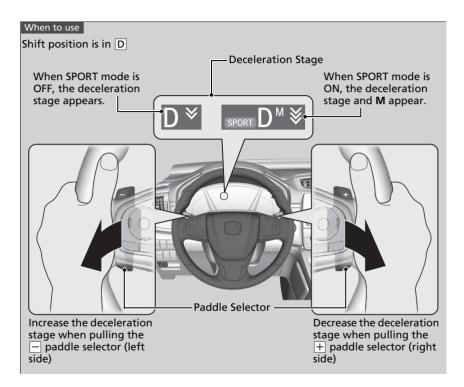
- Pull back the + selector (right side) to decrease the deceleration stage.
- Pull back the selector (left side) to increase the deceleration stage.

Pull the + selector for a few seconds when you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector.

In the following situations, the stage may not change and the stage icon will blink even if you pull back the selector. The deceleration stage may decrease or cancel automatically:

- The High Voltage battery is fully charged or its temperature is too cold or too hot.
- The speed of the vehicle is beyond the deceleration range with SPORT mode off.
- Hybrid system protection is needed.
- The paddle selector is operated while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.

If either paddle selector is operated, ACC with LSF will cancel automatically.



When SPORT mode is OFF

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change temporarily, and the stage will appear in the driver information interface.

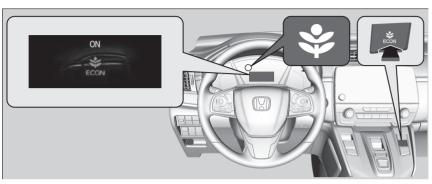
When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, pull the + selector (right side) for a few seconds.

The deceleration paddle selector will cancel automatically and deceleration stage in the driver information interface disappear when you drive with constant speed, situations of acceleration and decelerate just before stopping your vehicle.

When SPORT mode is ON

If you pull back the paddle selector, the rate of deceleration will change and the stage along with **M** will appear in the driver information interface. The deceleration stage will not cancel automatically while SPORT mode is ON. When you want to cancel the deceleration paddle selector, turn the SPORT mode OFF, or pull the + selector (right side) for a few seconds. When cancelled, deceleration stage in the driver information interface disappears.

ECON Mode



The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off. The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine and climate control system.

ECON Mode

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuations.

If you press the **SPORT** button while the ECON mode is ON, the SPORT mode takes the priority. **SPORT Mode** P. 510

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

Alerts pedestrians when a vehicle is propelled solely by electricity, approaching at speeds around 20 km/h (12 mph) or less.

Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System OFF Button



Press the button to turn the system on and off.

The indicator in the button comes on when the system is off.

The system is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

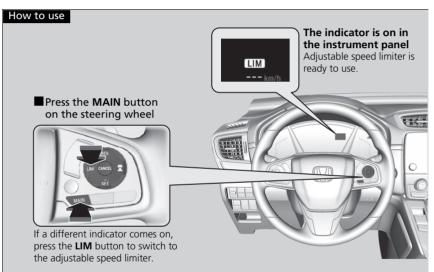
➢Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System

The pause function of the Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System shall not be used unless for an obvious lack of necessity to emit sound for alert in the surrounding area and that it is certain that there are no pedestrians within the short distance.

Adjustable Speed Limiter

This system enables you to set a maximum speed that cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal.

The vehicle speed limit can be set from about 30 km/h (18 mph) to about 250 km/h (156 mph).



➢Adjustable Speed Limiter

Adjustable Speed Limiter has limitations. It is always your responsibility to adjust the vehicle speed to obey the actual speed limit, and safely operate the vehicle.

Do not depress the accelerator pedal more than necessary.

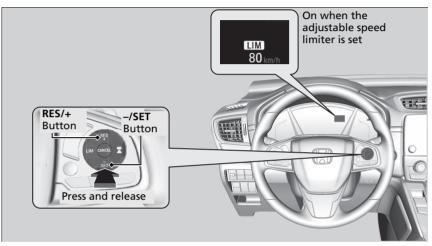
Maintain an appropriate accelerator pedal position depending on the vehicle speed.

The adjustable speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the adjustable speed limiter: Turn off the adjustable speed limiter by pressing the **MAIN** button.

You cannot use the adjustable speed limiter and the adaptive cruise control (ACC) with LSF or intelligent speed limiter at the same time.

To Set the Speed Limit



• Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and press the –/SET button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **-/SET** button, the speed limit is fixed, and the adjustable speed limiter is set. The speed limit is displayed.

• You can set the previously set speed limit by pressing the **RES/+** button.

≥To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the speed limit while travelling at less than 30 km/h (18 mph), the speed limit is set to 30 km/h (18 mph).

The beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more on a steep descent.

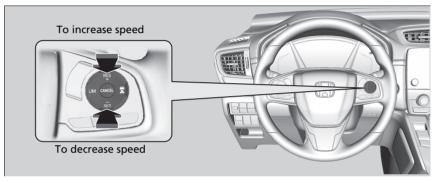
The adjustable speed limiter is set to the current speed if it is higher than the previously set speed limit when you press the **RES/+** button.

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements between km/h and mph on the driver information interface or audio/information display.

- Speedometer P. 144
- Customized Features P. 161, 400

To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the speed limit increases or decreases by 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the speed limit increases or decreases in increments of 10 km/h or 10 mph every 0.5 second until system limit is reached.
- The vehicle may accelerate or decelerate until the set speed is reached.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal completely.

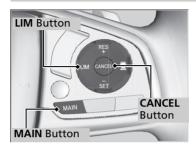
- ► The displayed limit speed blinks.
- ▶ The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The adjustable speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit.

To Cancel

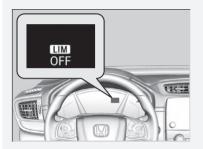


To cancel the adjustable speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

≫To Cancel

The adjustable speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with LSF or intelligent speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.



If there is a problem with the system when you are using the adjustable speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The adjustable speed limiter will be turned off.

Intelligent Speed Limiter

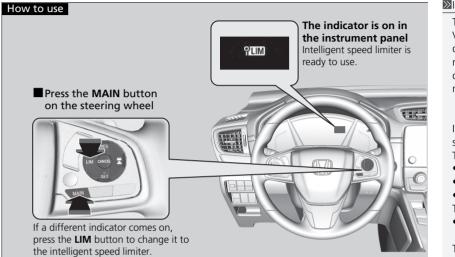
Automatically sets the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. And the speed limit cannot be exceeded even if you are depressing the accelerator pedal. If you fully depress the accelerator the speed limit can be exceeded.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 584

➢Intelligent Speed Limiter

Intelligent Speed Limiter has limitations. The Intelligent Speed Limiter may set itself to a speed above or below the actual speed limit, or may not work, particularly where the traffic sign recognition system does not operate correctly or where a road has no speed limit signs. It is always your responsibility to adjust the speed to obey the actual speed limit and to safely operate the vehicle.

Depending on the amount of depression of the accelerator pedal, the vehicle will accelerate until it reaches the speed identified by the traffic sign recognition system.



≥Intelligent Speed Limiter

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be detected, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 584

If the intelligent speed limiter is set to the wrong speed limit, try one of the following: To cancel

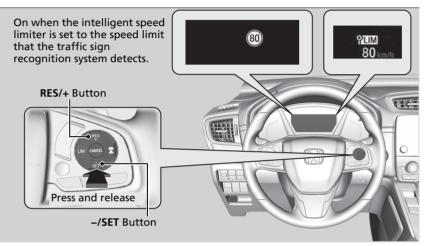
- Press the CANCEL button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the LIM button.
- To exceed the speed limit temporarily
- Depress the accelerator pedal fully.

The intelligent speed limiter may not hold the set speed limit when driving downhill. If this occurs, slow down by depressing the brake pedal.

When not using the intelligent speed limiter, turn off the intelligent speed limiter by pressing the **MAIN** button.

You cannot use the intelligent speed limiter and adaptive cruise control (ACC) with LSF or adjustable speed limiter at the same time.

To Set the Speed Limit



- Driving
- The moment you release the –/SET button or **RES/+** button, the intelligent speed limiter is set to the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects. The speed limit is displayed.

➢Intelligent Speed Limiter

Do not use the intelligent speed limiter in areas of different units from the display unit of the intelligent speed limiter.

Change the displayed measurement of the set vehicle speed to the same units as the driving areas.

- Speedometer P. 144
- Customized Features P. 161, 400

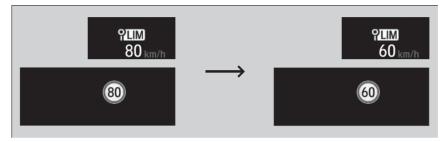
■To Set the Speed Limit

If you set the intelligent speed limiter when the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects is less than 30 km/h (20 mph), the speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause.

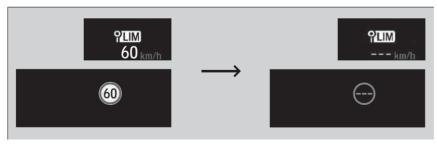
If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit or less. If necessary, slow down by depressing the brake pedal. And the beeper sounds and the displayed speed limit blinks if the vehicle speed exceeds the limit by 3 km/h (2 mph) or more.

■ When the traffic sign recognition system detects the new speed limit sign

The intelligent speed limiter is set to the new speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.

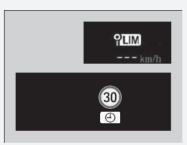


- The speed limitation function and warning function may switch to pause if there is no speed limit sign in the screen of the traffic sign recognition system when:
- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exits motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.



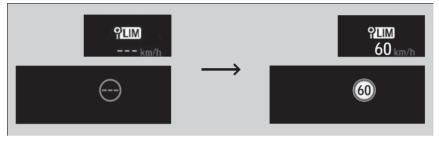
■To Set the Speed Limit

The intelligent speed limiter may also switch to pause when the traffic sign recognition system detects only additional speed limit signs.



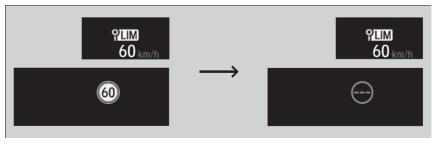
■ When the traffic sign recognition system detects the speed limit sign while the intelligent speed limiter is paused

The speed limitation function and warning function will be resumed automatically.



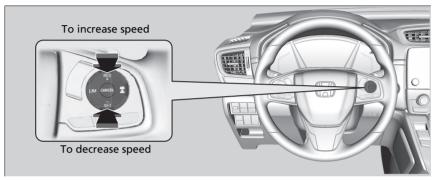
■ When the traffic sign recognition system does not detect the speed limit sign for a time while the intelligent speed limiter is activated

While driving, in addition to when the traffic sign recognition system detects no speed limit sign, the traffic sign recognition system may display no speed limit. But, intelligent speed limiter functions continue.



To Adjust the Speed Limit

Increase or decrease the speed limit by using the **RES/+** or **-/SET** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the speed limit is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- You can increase the speed limit up to +10 km/h or +5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can decrease the speed limit up to -10 km/h or -5 mph on the basis of the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects.
- You can accelerate until the set speed is reached. If your vehicle speed is higher than the speed limit that the traffic sign recognition system detects, your vehicle decelerates slowly to the speed limit.

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The speed limit can be exceeded by depressing the accelerator pedal fully.

► The displayed speed limit blinks.

The beeper sounds once the speed limit has been exceeded.

≥To Adjust the Speed Limit

A negative or positive offset with respect to the speed limit will be reset automatically when the traffic sign recognition system detects a new speed limit sign.

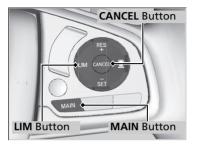
You cannot decrease the speed limit to less than 30 km/h (18 mph).

Exceeding the Speed Limit Temporarily

The beeper sounds when the vehicle speed goes higher than the set speed limit with the accelerator pedal depressed completely.

The intelligent speed limiter resumes working once the vehicle speed goes lower than the set speed limit. Driving

To Cancel

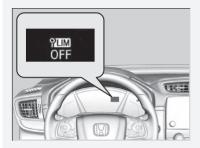


To cancel the intelligent speed limiter, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
- Press the **LIM** button.

To Cancel

The intelligent speed limiter changes into adaptive cruise control (ACC) with LSF or adjustable speed limiter if the **LIM** button is pressed.



If there is a problem with the system or traffic sign recognition system when you are using the intelligent speed limiter, the beeper sounds and **OFF** comes on. The intelligent speed limiter will be turned off.

Traffic Sign Recognition System P. 584

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine and motor output and selectively applying the brakes.

VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine and motor do not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic system. You will also see the indicator blink.

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

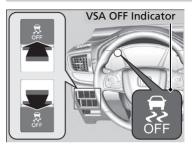
When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (LSF), road departure mitigation, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, parking brake and brake system (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the solution until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

≥Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the B button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after turning the power system on or while driving. This is normal.

Agile Handling Assist

Lightly brakes each of the front and rear wheels, as needed, when you turn the steering wheel, and helps to support the vehicle's stability and performance during cornering.

➢Agile Handling Assist

The agile handling assist cannot enhance stability in all driving situations. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, the agile handling assist does not activate.

You may hear a sound coming from the engine compartment while the agile handling assist is activated. This is normal.

Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System*

Your vehicle is equipped with the AWD system. When the system senses a loss of front wheel traction, it automatically transfers some power to the rear wheels. This allows you to utilise all available traction and may increase mobility.

You still need to exercise the same care when accelerating, steering, and braking that you would in a two wheel drive vehicle.

If you excessively spin all four wheels and overheat the AWD system, only the front wheels receive power. Stop until the system cools down.

➢Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control System *

NOTICE

Do not continuously spin the front tyres of your vehicle. Continuously spinning the front tyres can cause transmission or rear differential damage.

The AWD system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement P. 667

Deflation Warning System

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated. This will cause the low tyre pressure/ deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

Deflation Warning System Initialisation

You must start deflation warning system initialisation every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the deflation warning system:

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The transmission is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.

Deflation Warning System

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

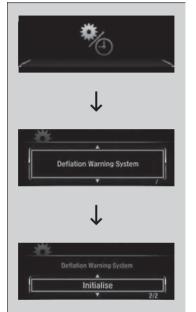
- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 665

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (LSF), road departure mitigation, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, parking brake and brake system (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



Models with colour audio system

You can initialise the system from the customized features on the driver information interface.

- Press the then ↓/▼ button to select
 (Customize Settings), then press the ENTER button.
- Deflation Warning System appears on the display.
- 2. Press the ENTER button.
 - The display switches to the customization setup screen, where you can select Cancel or Initialise.
- Press the ▲/▼ button and select Initialise, then press the ENTER button.
 - Completed screen appears, then the display returns to the customization menu screen.
- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 2-3.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

➢Deflation Warning System

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at initialisation.
- Tyre chains are used.

Deflation Warning System Initialisation

- The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40-100 km/h (25-62mph).
- During this period, if the power mode is set to on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

If the tyre chains are installed, remove them before initialising the deflation warning system.

If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



Models with Display Audio

You can initialise the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

- 1. Set the power mode to ON.
- 2. Select 💼.
- 3. Select Settings.
- 4. Select Vehicle.
- 5. Select Deflation Warning System.
- 6. Select Cancel or Initialise.
- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 4-5.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

Blind spot information System*

Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as "blind spots." When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on for a few seconds, providing assistance when you change lanes.

➢Blind spot information System *

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.

Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.

Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, blind spot information system has limitations. Over reliance on the blind spot information system may result in a collision.

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

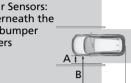
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) and the *message* appears on the driver information interface.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the pressage on the driver information interface.

How the system works

- Radar sensors detect a vehicle in the alert zone when your vehicle is moving forward at 20 km/h (12 mph) or faster.
 - Radar Sensors underneath the rear bumper corners

Alert zone range

A: Approx. 0.5 m (1.6 ft.) B: Approx. 3 m (10 ft.) C: Approx. 3 m (10 ft.)



Blind spot information System*

You can change the setting for the blind spot information system.

Customized Features P. 400

Turn the system off when towing a trailer. The system may not work properly for the following reasons.

- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the blind spot information system alert indicators to come on.

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

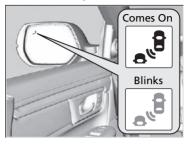
- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 10 km/h (6 mph).
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- A vehicle running in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

The system does not operate when in $[\mathbf{R}]$.

Alert Zone

C

When the system detects a vehicle



Blind spot information System Alert Indicator: Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

Comes on when:

- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 50 km/h (31 mph) from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 20 km/h (12 mph).

Blinks and a beeper sounds when:

You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.

Blind spot information System *

Blind spot information system may be adversely affected when:

- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (rain, snow, and fog).
- Driving on a bumpy road.
- Making a short turn that slightly tilts the vehicle.

For a proper blind spot information system operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

High Voltage Battery

The High Voltage battery gradually discharges even if the vehicle is not in use. As a result, if your vehicle is parked for an extended period of time, the battery charge level will become low. Extended periods of time at a low state of charge will shorten battery life. To maintain the battery state of charge, drive your vehicle for more than 30 minutes at least once every three months.

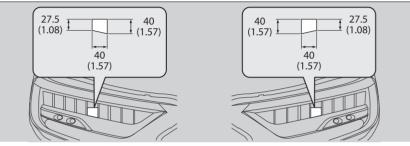
Extreme high temperatures can affect the battery life. You can minimize the effects by parking the vehicle in the shade during the summer.

➢High Voltage Battery

Be careful not to let the High Voltage battery drain too much. If the battery level becomes close to zero, it will make it impossible to start the power system.

Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Driving the right-hand type vehicle in right-hand traffic, or the left-hand type vehicle in left-hand traffic causes headlight glare to oncoming vehicles. You need to alter the headlight beam distribution using masking tape.



- **1.** Prepare for two pieces of masking tape, measuring 40 mm (1.57 inches) wide and 40 mm (1.57 inches) long.
 - Use masking tape that can shut out light, such as seal type waterproof vinyl.
- **2.** Affix the tape to the outer portion of the lens as shown.

➢Adjusting Headlight Distribution

Be careful not to adhere the tape to an incorrect location. If the headlight beam is distributed incorrectly, it may not comply with your country's legal requirements. Ask your dealer for details. Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors: a radar sensor located in the front grille and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has following functions.

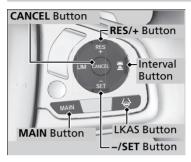
■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) ₽ P. 542
- Road Departure Mitigation System ₽ P. 578
- Traffic Sign Recognition System ₽ P. 584

■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF) ₽ P. 553
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ₽ P. 570

Operation Switches for the ACC with LSF/LKAS



MAIN Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC with LSF and LKAS. Or press to cancel these systems.

LKAS Button

Press to activate or cancel the LKAS.

■ RES/+ and –/SET Buttons

Press **RES/+** button to resume the ACC with LSF or increase the vehicle speed. Press **-/SET** button to set the ACC with LSF or decrease the vehicle speed.

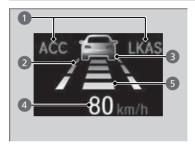
Interval Button

Press the 📄 (interval) button to change the ACC with LSF following-interval.

CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC with LSF.

Driver Information Interface Content



You can see the current state of ACC with LSF and LKAS.

Indicates that ACC with LSF and LKAS are ready to be activated.

Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.

3 Indicates whether or not a vehicle is detected ahead.

4 Shows the set vehicle speed.

5 Shows the set vehicle interval.

Driver Information Interface Content

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when a potential collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimize collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collision nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 547

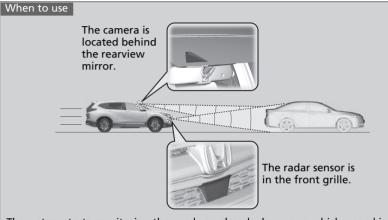
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera P. 592

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

Radar Sensor P. 594

How the system works



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h (3 mph) and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h (3 mph) and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h (62 mph) or less and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with:
- Vehicles detected in front of you that are stationary, oncoming, or travelling in your same direction.
- A pedestrian who is detected in front of you.
- Your vehicle speed is above 100 km/h (62 mph), and the system determines there is a chance of a collision with a vehicle detected in front of you travelling in your same direction.

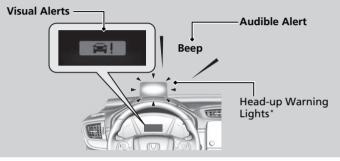
➢How the system works

When the CMBS activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

When the system activates

The system provides visual and audible alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



Driving

At system's earliest collision alert stage, you can change the distance (**Far/Normal/ Near**) between vehicles at which alerts will come on through the driver information interface or audio/information screen setting options.

Customized Features P. 161, 400

\gg How the system works

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.

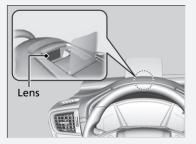
However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 547

The head-up warning * uses a lens located at the front end of the dashboard.

Do not cover the lens or spill any liquid on it.

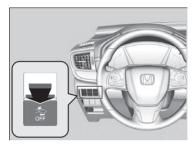


Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS			
		The sensors detect a vehicle	E-pretensioner	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Braking
Stage one	Normal Vehicle Far Near Ahead	There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	—	When in Far , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in Normal setting, and in Near , at a shorter distance than in Normal .	_
Stage two	Your Vehicle Vehicle Ahead	The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Retracts the driver's seat belt gently a few times, providing a physical warning.	Visual and audible alerts.	Lightly applied
Stage three	Your Vehicle Vehicle Ahead	The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.	Forcefully tightens driver and front passenger seat belts.		Forcefully applied

CMBS On and Off



Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS is off:

- The CMBS indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you turn the power system on, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the CMBS indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations P. 547

When the CMBS is activated, it will continue to operate even if the accelerator pedal is partially depressed. However, it will be cancelled if the accelerator pedal is deeply depressed.

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (LSF), road departure mitigation, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, parking brake and brake system (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

Front Sensor Camera P. 592

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- A vehicle or a pedestrian is not clearly lit by the headlights while driving at night or in a dark lighting condition such as in a tunnel.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g. the warning message appears too frequently).

Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- When tyre chains are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel with the headlights turned off.

Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

Automatic shutoff

CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

With Little Chance of a Collision

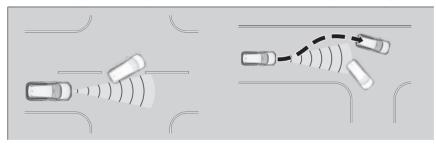
The CMBS may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

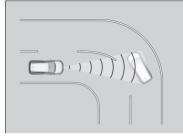
At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.



On a curve

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

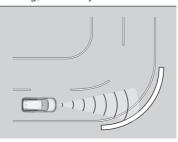


Through a low bridge at high speed

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.

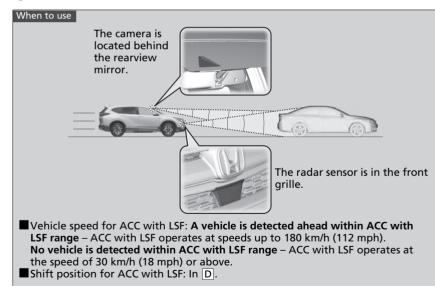
You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects (such as a traffic sign and guard rail) on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.



Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)

Helps to maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours and, if the detected vehicle comes to a stop, can decelerate and stop your vehicle, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

When ACC with LSF slows your vehicle by applying the brakes, your vehicle's brake lights will illuminate.



Madaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)

Improper use of ACC with LSF can lead to a crash.

Use ACC with LSF only when driving on motorways and in good weather conditions.

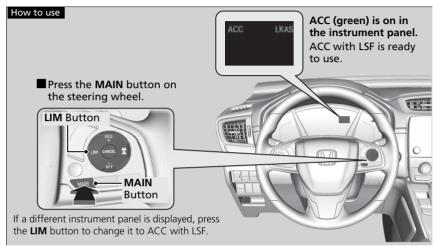
ACC with LSF has limited braking capability and may not stop your vehicle in time to avoid a collision with a vehicle that quickly stops in front of you.

Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal if the conditions require.

Important Reminder

As with any system, there are limits to ACC with LSF. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

How to activate the system



Mage and the matching of the

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC with LSF and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

ACC with LSF may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations P. 560

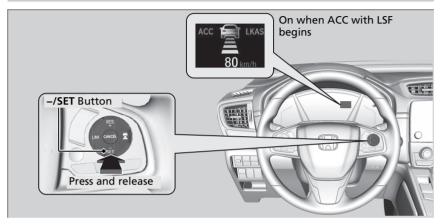
When not using ACC with LSF: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

Do not use ACC with LSF under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC with LSF will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

To Set the Vehicle Speed

depressed.



When driving at about 30 km/h (18 mph) or above: Take your foot off the pedal and press the –/SET button when you reach the desired speed. The moment you release the button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC with LSF begins. When driving at slower than about 30 km/h (18 mph): If the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is not depressed, pressing the button fixes the set speed to about 30 km/h (18 mph) regardless of current vehicle speed. If your vehicle is stationary, you can set the vehicle speed even with the brake pedal

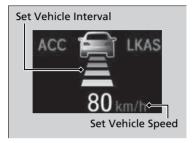
Madaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (LSF), road departure mitigation, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, parking brake and brake system (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

■To Set the Vehicle Speed

You can switch the displayed set speed measurements on the driver information interface or audio/information screen between km/h and mph.

- Speedometer P. 144
- Customized Features P. 161, 400



When ACC with LSF starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

When you use ACC with LSF, Straight Driving Assist (a feature of the Electric Power Steering system) is activated. By enabling the steering system to automatically compensate for natural steering pull, Straight Driving Assist makes it easier for you to keep your vehicle in a straight line.

When in Operation

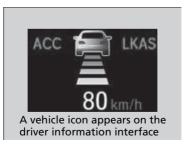
There is a vehicle ahead

ACC with LSF monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC with LSF range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC with LSF system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

Discrete Change Following-interval P. 564



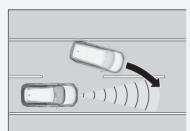
ACC with LSF Range: 120 m



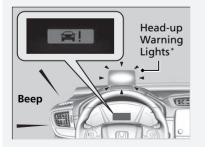
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed is detected in front of you, your vehicle starts to slow down.

≫When in Operation

If the vehicle ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle cuts in front of you, the beeper sounds, a message appears on the driver information interface, and the head-up warning lights* flash.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



There is no vehicle ahead



Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC with LSF accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC with LSF range.

ACC with LSF stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC with LSF range.

≫When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC with LSF may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC with LSF. Additionally, ACC with LSF may not work properly under certain conditions.

ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations P. 560

A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with LSF range and slows to a stop





Your vehicle also stops, automatically. The message appears on the driver information interface

When the vehicle ahead of you starts again, the vehicle icon on the driver information interface blinks. If you press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, or depress the accelerator pedal, ACC with LSF operates again within the prior set speed.

If no vehicle is ahead of you before you resume driving, depress the accelerator pedal and ACC with LSF will operate again within the prior set speed. A vehicle detected ahead is within ACC with LSF range and slows to a stop

Exiting a vehicle that has been stopped while the ACC with LSF system is operating can result in the vehicle moving without operator control.

A vehicle that moves without operator control can cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death.

Never exit a vehicle when the vehicle is stopped by ACC with LSF.

ACC with LSF Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the ACC indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

Front Sensor Camera P 592

Environmental conditions

Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

Roadway conditions

Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- When the front grille is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.

➢ACC with LSE Conditions and Limitations.

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page. Radar Sensor P. 594

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera P 592

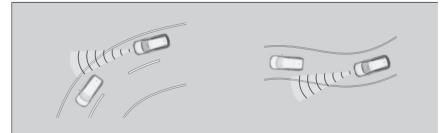
If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the MAIN button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behaviour of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

Driving

Detection limitations

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.

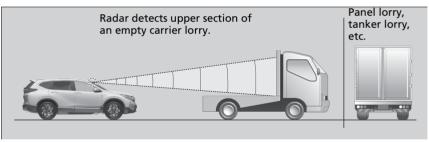


- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

• When driving through a narrow iron bridge.



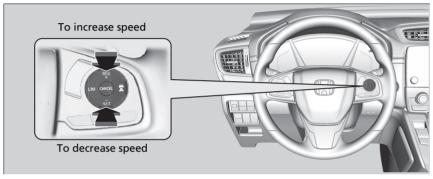
- When the vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- When the vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.



• When your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **–/SET** button on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h or 1 mph accordingly.
- If you press and hold the **RES/+** or **-/SET** button, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h or 10 mph accordingly.

To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC with LSF may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

When you depress the accelerator pedal and then push and release the **-/SET** button, the current speed of the vehicle is set.

To Set or Change Following-interval



Press the 🖹 (interval) button to change the ACC with LSF following-interval. Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through short, middle, long and extra long following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate followinginterval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation. The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

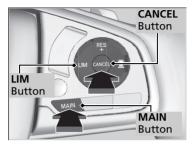
To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:						
		80 km/h (50 mph)	104 km/h (65 mph)					
Short		24.7 metres 81.0 feet 1.1 sec	31.5 metres 103.3 feet 1.1 sec					
Middle		34.2 metres 112.2 feet 1.5 sec	43.4 metres 142.4 feet 1.5 sec					
Long		46.8 metres 153.5 feet 2.1 sec	60.8 metres 199.4 feet 2.1 sec					
Extra Long		63.5 metres 208.3 feet 2.9 sec	83.4 metres 273.6 feet 2.9 sec					

When your vehicle stops automatically because a vehicle detected ahead of you has stopped, the interval between the two vehicles will vary based on the ACC with LSF interval setting.

To Cancel



To cancel ACC with LSF, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the MAIN button.
 ACC with LSF indicator (green) goes off.
- Press the **LIM** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.
 - When the LSF function has stopped the vehicle, you cannot cancel ACC with LSF by depressing the brake pedal.

≫To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC with LSF, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC with LSF has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC with LSF is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC with LSF to automatically cancel:

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When the vehicle is stopped on a very steep slope.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC with LSF range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- When the Maximum Load Limit is exceeded.
- When passing through an enclosed space, such as tunnel.

The ACC with LSF automatic cancellation can be also triggered by the following causes. In these cases, the parking brake will be automatically applied.

- The driver's seat belt is unfastened when the vehicle is stationary.
- The vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes.
- The power system is turned off.

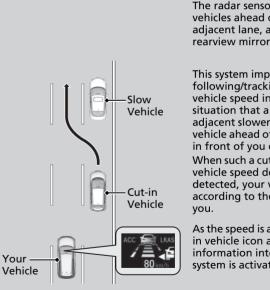
➢Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC with LSF has been automatically cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC with LSF to cancel improves, then press the **–/SET** button.

Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Function

Provides an early prediction for a cut-in situation. The system detects that a vehicle running in the adjacent slower lane has an intention to cut in front of you and adjusts the speed of your vehicle in advance while ACC with LSF is activated.

How the system works



The radar sensor in the front grille detects vehicles ahead of you including those in the adjacent lane, and the camera behind the rearview mirror detects the lane markings.

This system improves ACC with LSF's following/tracking property; it adjusts your vehicle speed in advance predicting a situation that a vehicle running in the adjacent slower lane catches up with a slower vehicle ahead of it and changes the lane to cut in front of you early. When such a cut-in situation is predicted, your

vehicle speed decreases a little. When detected, your vehicle speed decreases according to the vehicle cutting in front of you.

As the speed is adjusted by the system, the cut in vehicle icon appears on the driver information interface to indicate that the system is activated.

Left-hand drive type is shown.

How the system activates

When a vehicle cuts in front of you is going faster than the vehicle ahead of it, and your vehicle is going faster than the cut-in vehicle (i.e., when you need to slow down), ACC with LSF predicts the cutting-in and adjust your vehicle speed.

The system activates when all the following conditions are met:

- When ACC with LSF is activated.
- When you are driving on a multi-lane road.
- When your vehicle speed is between about 80 km/h (50 mph) and about 180 km/h (112 mph).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- When a vehicle cuts in from a slower lane.

Intelligent adaptive cruise control on and off

You can turn the system on and off using the driver information interface.

Customized Features P. 161, 400

➢Intelligent Adaptive Cruise Control Function

When traffic changes from right hand side to left hand side, driving on a road where there is oncoming traffic for some distance automatically switches the lane to be detected from right to left.

Intelligent adaptive cruise control may not activate under the following conditions:

- When the speed difference between the cut-in vehicle and the vehicle ahead of it in the adjacent lane is small
- When the speed difference between the cut-in vehicle and your vehicle is small (i.e., when speed adjustment is not required)
- When a vehicle simply cuts in front of your vehicle with no vehicle ahead in the adjacent lane
- When a vehicle cuts in from a faster lane

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile, audible and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.

Front sensor

camera

Monitors the

lane lines

Tactile, audible and visual alerts

that the vehicle is drifting out of a

detected lane.

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel.

audible and a warning display alert you

When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.

If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

➢Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 123

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the front windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

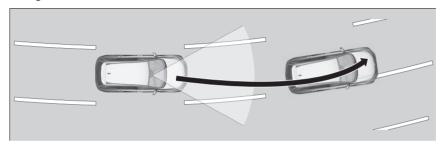
LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 575

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera P. 592

Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane, when the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration, and audible and visual warnings.

Warning Area
Warning Area

≥Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

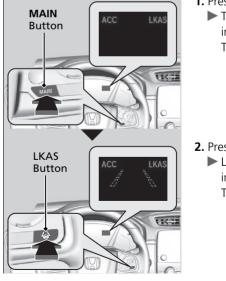
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle speed is between 72 and 185 km/h (45 and 115 mph).
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in high speed operation.

How to activate the system



- 1. Press the MAIN button.
 - The LKAS is on in the driver information interface. The system is ready to use.

 2. Press the LKAS button.
 ▶ Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface. The system is activated.

When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts towards either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



- **3.** Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
 - The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

To Cancel



To cancel the LKAS: Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you turn the power system off, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

≫To Cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC with LSF on and off.



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the driver information interface change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

The system operation is suspended if you:

- Set the wipers to **HI**.
 - Turning the wipers off or setting it to LO resumes the LKAS.

Models with automatic intermittent wipers

- Set the wiper switch to AUTO and the wipers operate at high speed.
 - The LKAS resumes when the wipers stop or operate at low speed.

All models

- Decrease the vehicle speed to 64 km/h (40 mph) or less.
 - Increasing the vehicle speed to 72 km/h (45 mph) or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
 - The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

■ The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
- The steering wheel is quickly turned.
- You fail to steer the vehicle.
- Driving through a sharp curve.
- Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 185 km/h (115 mph).
- The Road Departure Mitigation System is activated.

Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically cancelled.

LKAS Conditions and Limitations

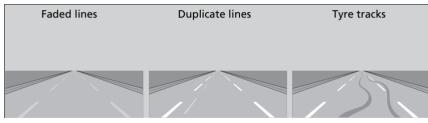
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.



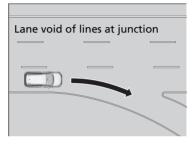
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.

Very wide or narrow traffic lane



- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.



Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings or the edge of the pavement, or leaving the roadway altogether.

How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow) and the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings or the outer edge of the pavement (bordered by grass or gravel) without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

If the system determines that the vehicle is about to veer off the edge of the pavement, it will alert the driver with an audible warning instead of steering wheel vibrations.

Customized Features P. 161, 400

As a visual alert, improvement of the driver information interface.

➢Road Departure Mitigation System

Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations. Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

Front Sensor Camera P. 592

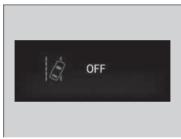
The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations P. 582

There are times when you may not notice Road Departure Mitigation functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions. If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.



ON

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you. After that, the warning to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is partially disabled.

After a few minutes, the message to the left is displayed and the Road Departure Mitigation system is fully restored.

➢Road Departure Mitigation System

If LKAS is off and you have selected **Normal** or **Early** from the customised options using the driver information interface or audio/information screen, the message below will appear if the system has determined that there is a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings or the outer edge of the pavement (into grass or gravel border). If you have selected **Delayed**, however, the message will only appear if the vehicle is about to cross over the outer edge of the pavement.

Customized Features P. 161, 400



How the System Activates

The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h (45 and 112 mph).
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in continuous operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

➢How the System Activates

The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the $[\underline{\mathbb{K}}]$ indicator comes and stays on.

Indicators P. 114

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

Road Departure Mitigation On and Off



Press the Road Departure Mitigation button to turn the system on and off.

The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

➢Road Departure Mitigation On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the driver information interface or audio/information screen the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

Customized Features P. 161, 400

The adaptive cruise control (ACC) with low speed follow (LSF), road departure mitigation, vehicle stability assist (VSA) system, vehicle stability assist (VSA) OFF, low tyre pressure/deflation warning system, parking brake and brake system (amber) and collision mitigation braking system (CMBS) indicators may come on in amber along with a message in the driver information interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). Each indicator should go off. If any do not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.
- The outer edge of the pavement is bordered by objects, material etc. other than grass or gravel.

Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains are installed.
- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

Traffic Sign Recognition System

Reminds you of road sign information, such as the current speed limit and that overtaking is prohibited, your vehicle has just passed through, showing it on the driver information interface and the head-up display^{*}.

How the System Works

When the camera located behind the rearview mirror captures traffic signs while driving, the system displays the ones that are recognised as designated for your vehicle. The sign icon will be displayed until the vehicle reaches a predetermined time and distance.



The sign icon also may switch to another one, or disappear when:

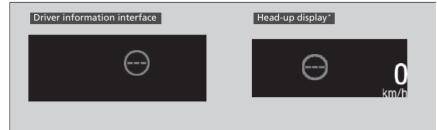
- The end of speed limit or other designated limit is detected.
- Your vehicle enters/exists motorway or highway.
- You make a turn with a turn signal at an intersection.

Traffic Sign Recognition System

The system is designed to detect signs that follow the Vienna Convention standards. Not all signs may be displayed, but any signs posted on roadsides should not be ignored. The system does not work on the designated traffic signs of all the countries you travel, nor in all situations.

Do not rely too much on the system. Always drive at speeds appropriate for the road conditions.

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally. Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally. After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly. If the system does not detect any traffic signs while you are driving, the image below may appear.



➢Traffic Sign Recognition System

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing.

Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

If **()** appears, the Traffic Sign Recognition System does not work, and **()** will be displayed.

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If papears, the Traffic Sign Recognition System does not work, and N will be displayed.

• Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

➢Traffic Sign Recognition System

If your vehicle exceeds the detected speed limit, an icon representing the speed limit sign for the current area will blink in the display.

The system's ability to accurately notify the driver of the speed limit is dependent on certain conditions such as the units displayed on the traffic sign as well as the speed and direction of travel of the vehicle. In some cases, the system may display false warnings or other inaccurate information.

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations P. 587

The unit for speed limits (mph or km/h) varies from country to country. If you enter a country whose unit differs to the one of the country from which you came, use the driver information interface or audio/ information display to change the unit, otherwise the system will not work correctly.

Speedometer P. 144
 Customized Features P. 161, 400

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

The Traffic Sign Recognition system may not be able to recognise the traffic sign in the following cases.

Vehicle conditions

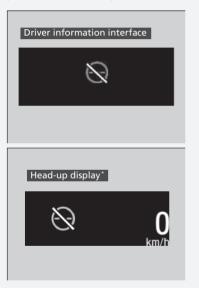
- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- There are portions remaining to be wiped.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

Environmental conditions

- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- When you drive in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Driving at night, in dark areas such as long tunnels.
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- A vehicle in front of you is travelling flying up spray or snow.

Traffic Sign Recognition System Conditions and Limitations

When the Traffic Sign Recognition System malfunctions, (S) appears on the driver information interface. If this message does not disappear, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



The position or the condition of the traffic sign

- A sign is hard to be found since it is in a complicated area.
- A sign is located far away from your vehicle.
- A sign is located where the beam of the headlight is hard to reach.
- A sign is on a corner or bend in the road.
- Faded or bent signs.
- Rotated or damaged signs.
- A sign is covered with mud, snow, or frost.
- A part of the sign is hidden by the trees, or the sign itself is hidden by a vehicle and others
- Light (a streetlight) or a shadow is reflected on the surface of the sign.
- A sign is too bright or too dark (an electric sign).
- A sign of a small size.

Other conditions

• When you are driving at a high speed.

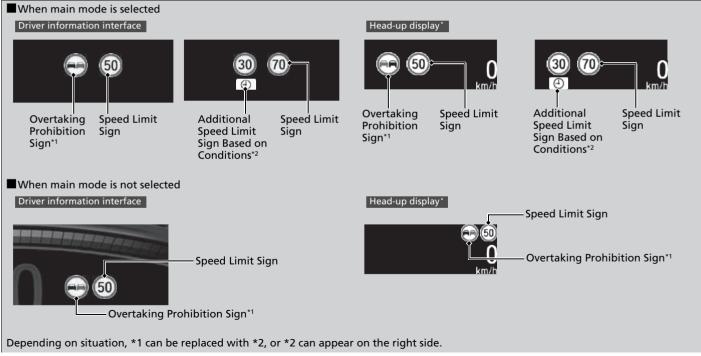
The Traffic Sign Recognition System may not operate correctly, such as displaying a sign that does not follow the actual regulation for the roadway or does not exist at all in the following cases.

- ► A speed limit sign may display at a higher or lower speed than the actual speed limit.
- There is a supplementary sign with further information such as weather, time, vehicle type, etc.
- Figures on the sign are hard to read (electric sign, numbers on the sign are blurred, etc.).
- A sign is in the vicinity of the lane you are driving even though it is not for the lane (speed limit sign situated at the junction between the side road and the main road, etc.).
- There are things that look similar to the colour or shape of the recognition object (similar sign, electric sign, signboard, structure, etc.).
- A lorry or another large vehicle with a sticker of the speed limit sign on the back are travelling in front of you.

Signs Displayed on the Driver Information Interface and Head-Up Display*

Two traffic signs can be simultaneously displayed next to each other when detected.

The speed limit sign icon is displayed on the right half of the screen. The overtaking prohibition sign icon appears on the left. Any additional sign that indicates speed limit based on weather (snow, etc.) or specific period of time can appear on either side.



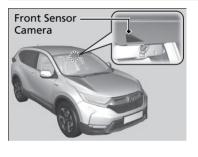
Selecting to display traffic signs when main mode is off

You can continue displaying reduced-size traffic sign icon on the driver information interface and head-up display^{*} even while the main mode is not selected.

Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Traffic Sign Recognition System, and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

➢Front Sensor Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windscreen, bonnet, or front grill that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windscreen within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windscreen with a genuine Honda replacement windscreen. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windscreen may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

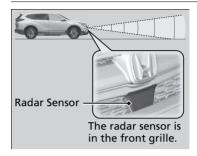
After replacing the windscreen, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windscreen and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

Front Sensor Camera

- If the message appears:
- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the air flow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.
- If the message appears:
- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Radar Sensor



The radar sensor is in the front grille.

Radar Sensor

Avoid strong impacts to the radar sensor cover.

For the CMBS to work properly:

- Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.
- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
- Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by using the CMBS OFF button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

CMBS On and Off P. 546

If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- Your vehicle is involved in a frontal collision.
- Your vehicle drives through deep water or is submerged in deep water.
- Your vehicle strongly strikes a bump, curb, chock, or embankment that could jar the radar sensor.

Braking

Brake System

Parking Brake

Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parked. When the parking brake is applied, you can manually or automatically release it.





To apply

The electric parking brake can be applied any time the vehicle has 12-volt battery, no matter which position the power mode is in.

Pull the electric parking brake switch up gently and securely.

The parking brake and brake system indicator comes on.

To release

The power mode must be ON in order to release the electric parking brake.

- 1. Depress the brake pedal.
- 2. Press the electric parking brake switch.
 - The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

Manually releasing the parking brake using the switch helps your vehicle start slowly and smoothly when facing down hill on steep hills.

≫Brake System

When you depress the brake pedal, you may hear a whirring sound from the engine compartment. This is because the brake system is in operation, and it is normal.

■Parking Brake

You may hear the electric parking brake system motor operating from the rear wheel area when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

The brake pedal may slightly move due to the electric parking brake system operation when you apply or release the parking brake. This is normal.

You cannot apply or release the parking brake if the 12-volt battery goes dead.

Jump Starting P. 704

If you pull up and hold the electric parking brake switch while driving, the brakes on all four wheels are applied by the electric servo brake system until the vehicle comes to a stop. The electric parking brake then applies, and the switch should be released.

Automatic parking brake feature operation

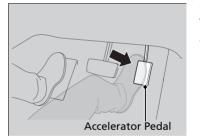
If the automatic parking brake feature has been activated:

- The parking brake is applied automatically when you set the power mode to OFF.
- To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.
 - **Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature** P. 597

■ To release automatically

Depressing the accelerator pedal releases the parking brake.

Use the accelerator pedal to release the parking brake when you are starting the vehicle facing uphill, or in a traffic jam.



Gently depress the accelerator pedal. When on a hill, it may require more accelerator input to release.

► The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off.

➢Parking Brake

In the following situations, the parking brake automatically operates.

- When the vehicle stops with the automatic brake hold system activated for more than 10 minutes.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped and brake hold is applied.
- When the power system is turned off while the brake hold system is applied.
- When there is a problem with brake hold system while the brake hold is applied.
- When the vehicle stops more than 10 minutes while ACC with LSF is activated.
- When the driver's seat belt is unfastened while your vehicle is stopped automatically by ACC with LSF.
- When the power system is turned off while ACC with LSF is activated.

If the parking brake cannot be released automatically, release it manually.

When the vehicle is travelling uphill, the accelerator pedal may need to be pressed farther to automatically release the electric parking brake.

You can release the parking brake automatically when:

- You are wearing the driver's seat belt.
- The power system is on.
- The transmission is not in $[\mathbf{P}]$ or $[\mathbf{N}]$.

Activating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

With the power mode in ON, carry out the following steps to either activate or deactivate the automatic parking brake feature.

- **1.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- Without depressing the brake pedal, pull up the electric parking brake switch.
 Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has come on.
- **3.** Pull up and hold the parking brake switch. When you hear a beeping sound, release the switch and within 3 seconds pull up and hold the switch again.
- **4.** When you hear a sound indicating that the procedure is completed, release the switch.
 - Two beeps indicates that the feature has been activated.
 - ▶ One beep indicates that the feature has been deactivated.
 - ▶ When you have completed activating the feature, the parking brake will remain applied after you turn off the power system.
 - ► To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

If you need to temporarily deactivate the feature for when putting your vehicle through a conveyor type car wash or when having your vehicle towed. You can follow the procedure explained below.

- **1.** Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a stop.
- **2.** Set the power mode to OFF and then within 2 seconds push down the electric parking brake switch.
 - Activation and deactivation settings for the feature will not be affected.
 - ► Before temporarily deactivating the feature, make sure to first turn off both ACC with LSF and the automatic brake hold system.
 - ► To confirm that the parking brake is applied, check if the parking brake and brake system indicator is on.

➢Parking Brake

The parking brake cannot be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Malfunction indicator lamp
- Transmission system indicator

The parking brake may not be released automatically while the following indicators are on:

- Parking brake and brake system indicator
- VSA system indicator
- ABS indicator
- Supplemental restraint system indicator

The parking brake is applied while the vehicle is moving with the electric parking brake switch being pulled.

Mactivating and deactivating the automatic parking brake feature

In cold climates, the parking brake may freeze in place if applied.

When parking the vehicle, chock the wheels and make sure the automatic parking brake feature is deactivated.

Also, when putting your vehicle through a conveyortype car wash or when having your vehicle towed, deactivate the automatic parking brake feature and leave the parking brake released.

Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you to retain steering control when braking very hard.

Brake Assist System P. 602

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) P. 601

≫Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Applying constant pressure to the brakes while going down a long hill can cause the brakes to heat up, resulting in a loss of stopping power. Therefore, when descending a long hill, release the accelerator pedal and allow regenerative braking to slow the vehicle down. To adjust the rate of deceleration, use the deceleration paddle selector.

When the High Voltage battery is recharging, regenerative braking may not be possible.

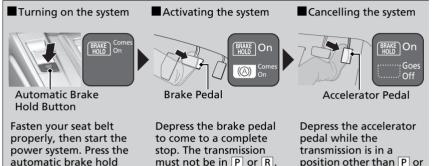
 POWER/CHARGE Gauge P. 145
 High Voltage Battery Charge Level Gauge P. 145

Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 511

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

Automatic Brake Hold

Keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal until the accelerator pedal is pressed. You can use this system while the vehicle is temporarily stopped, like at traffic lights and in heavy traffic.



 The automatic brake hold system indicator comes on. The system is turned on.

button.

- must not be in P or R. The automatic brake hold indicator comes on. Braking is kept for up to 10 minutes.
- Release the brake pedal after the automatic brake hold indicator comes on.

N. The brake hold is cancelled and the vehicle starts to move.

 The automatic brake hold indicator goes off. The system continues to be on.

Automatic Brake Hold

AWARNING

Activating the automatic brake hold system on steep hills or slippery roads may still allow the vehicle to move if you remove your foot from the brake pedal.

If a vehicle unexpectedly moves, it may cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Never activate the automatic brake hold system or rely on it to keep a vehicle from moving when stopped on a steep hill or slippery roads.

Using the automatic brake hold system to park the vehicle may result in the vehicle unexpectedly moving.

If a vehicle moves unexpectedly, it may cause a crash, resulting in serious injury or death

Never leave the vehicle when braking is temporarily kept by automatic brake hold and always park the vehicle by putting the transmission in P and applying the parking brake.

■ The system automatically cancels when:

- You engage the parking brake.
- You depress the brake pedal and put the transmission into \mathbf{P} or \mathbf{R} .

The system automatically cancels and the parking brake is applied when:

- Braking is kept for more than 10 minutes.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The power system is turned off.
- There is a problem with automatic brake hold system.

Turning off the automatic brake hold system



Automatic Brake Hold Button While the system is on, press the automatic brake hold button again.

The automatic brake hold system indicator goes off.

If you want to turn off automatic brake hold while the system is in operation, press the automatic brake hold button with the brake pedal depressed.

Mutomatic Brake Hold

While the system is activated, you can turn off the power system or park the vehicle through the same procedure as you normally do.

When Stopped P. 604

Whether the system is on, or the system is activated, the automatic brake hold turns off once the power system is off.

■Turning off the automatic brake hold system

Make sure to turn off the automatic brake hold system before using an automated car wash.

You may hear an operating noise if the vehicle moves while the automatic brake hold system is in operation.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h (6 mph), the ABS stops.

Manti-lock Brake System (ABS)

NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system.

While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the power system has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

Brake Assist System

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

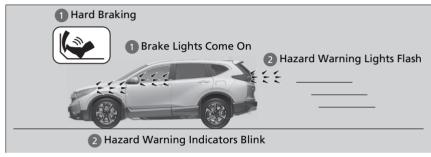
Brake assist system operation

Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h (37 mph) or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

➢Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

When Stopped

- **1.** Depress the brake pedal firmly.
- **2.** With the brake pedal depressed, pull up the electric parking brake switch slowly, but fully.
- **3.** Change the transmission to \mathbf{P} .
- 4. Turn off the power system.
 - ▶ The parking brake and brake system indicator goes off in about 15 seconds.

Always confirm the electric parking brake is set, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

➢Parking Your Vehicle

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that \underline{P} is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

≫When Stopped

NOTICE

The following can damage the driveline:

- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Changing into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

When facing uphill, do not hold the vehicle by depressing the accelerator pedal.

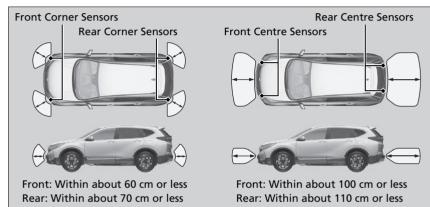
Doing so may cause the power system to overheat and fail.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

Parking Sensor System*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles near your vehicle, and the beeper and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

The sensor location and range



Parking Sensor System*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

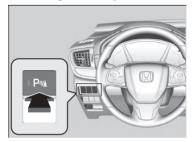
- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

Parking sensor system on and off

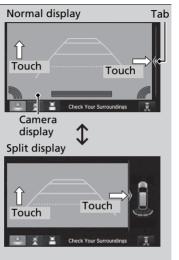


With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner, rear centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is in $[\mathbf{R}]$, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

The front centre and corner sensors start to detect an obstacle when the transmission is not in $[\mathbf{P}]$ or $[\mathbf{R}]$, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h (5 mph).

Screen Operation



You can switch the display to normal display or split display by touching the tab vicinity or on the camera display.

Screen Operation

If the parking sensor system is off or there is a malfunction in the system, the tab disappears, and the split display returns to the normal display.

You can also switch the display to normal display or split display using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 400

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles becomes shorter

Length of the intermittent beep	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Driver information interface/
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors	indicator	Audio/information screen
Moderate	—	Front: About 100-60 cm Rear: About 110-60 cm	Blinks in Yellow*1	
Short	Front: About 60-45 cm Rear: About 70-45 cm	About 60-50 cm	Blinks in Amber	
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 50-40 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 40 cm or less	Blinks in Red	Indicators light where the sensor detects an obstacle.

*1:At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

Driving

Turning off All Rear Sensors

- **1.** Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- 2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
- **3.** Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
- 4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.

▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

➢Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you shift to $\boxed{\mathbf{R}}$, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient especially when you are getting out of a parking space backwards.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

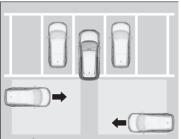
Cross traffic monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the cross traffic monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

How the System Works



The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
 Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off P. 615
 Customized Features P. 400
- The transmission is in **R**.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h (3 mph) or lower.

Radar sensors: Underneath the rear bumper corners

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

Cross traffic monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 5 km/h (3 mph) or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 10 km/h (6 mph) and 25 km/h (16 mph).
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

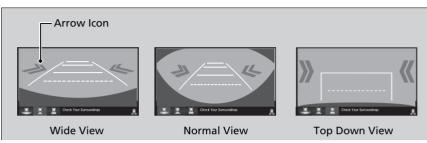
The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

Cross Traffic Monitor*

For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.

Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

When the System Detects a Vehicle



An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

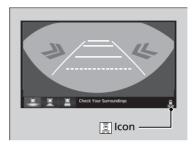
When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the $[\underline{S}]$ on the lower right changes to $[\underline{N}]$ in amber when the transmission is in $[\underline{R}]$, mud, snow, ice and other debris may have accumulated in the vicinity of the sensor. The system is temporarily cancelled. Check the bumper corners for any obstructions, and thoroughly clean the area if necessary.

If the R comes on when the transmission is in R, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the transmission in $[\mathbf{R}]$, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off



Tap to turn the system on and off. The indicator (green) comes on with the system on.

You can also switch on and off the system using the audio/information screen.

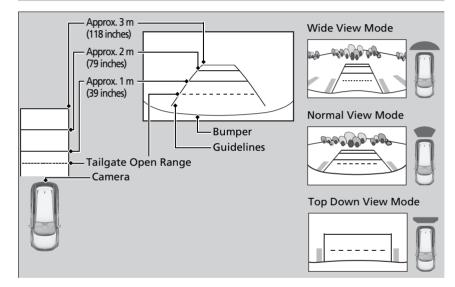
Customized Features P. 400

Multi-View Rear Camera*

About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the transmission is put into $[\mathbf{R}]$.

Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



➢About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can view three different camera modes on the audio/information screen.

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.

- 🕮 : Wide view mode
- 🚊 : Normal view mode
- 🖺 : Top down view mode
- If the last used viewing mode was Wide or Normal, the same view mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If Top down view mode was last used before you turned off the power system, Wide View mode is selected next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into R.
- If Top down view mode was last used more than 10 seconds after you put the transmission out of **R**, Wide View mode is selected the next time you put the transmission into **R**.

Mabout Your Multi-View Rear Camera

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

Customized reatures P. 2

Fixed Guideline

On: Guidelines appear when you put the transmission into **R**. **Off:** Guidelines do not appear.

Dynamic Guideline

On: Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

Off: Guidelines do not move.

Refueling

Fuel Information

Fuel recommendation

EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher

Your vehicle is designed to operate on premium unleaded petrol with a research octane of 95 or higher.

If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

Fuel tank capacity: 57 L

≫Fuel Information

NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

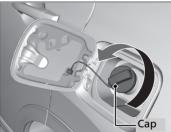


Oxygenated Fuels

Oxygenated fuels are blended with petrol and ethanol or other compounds. Your vehicle is also designed to operate on oxygenated fuels containing up to 10% ethanol by volume and up to 22% ETBE by volume, based on the EN 228 standards. For more information, ask your dealer.

How to Refuel





Cap Holder

- **1.** Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
- **2.** Turn off the power system.
- **3.** Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner. of the dashboard
 - ► The fuel fill door opens.
- 4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.

How to Refuel

Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.

- Turn the power system off, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result. of changes in air temperature.

- **5.** Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
- **6.** Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
 - ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
- 7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
 - Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

Fuel Economy and CO₂ Emissions

Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO_2 emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet. On vehicles without service reminder system, follow the Maintenance schedule.

- Maintenance Schedule* P. 631
- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

➢Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO₂ Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.



Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.

Before Performing Maintenance

Inspection and Maintenance
Safety When Performing Maintenance 623
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance
Service
About Your Maintenance Service 625
Service Reminder System*
Maintenance Schedule*631
Maintenance Under the Bonnet
Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet 639
Opening the Bonnet640
Recommended Engine Oil 642

Oil Check	. 644
Adding Engine Oil	645
Cooling System	. 646
Inverter Coolant	. 649
Transmission Fluid	. 651
Brake Fluid	652
Refilling Window Washer Fluid	653
Fuel Filter	654
Replacing Light Bulbs	655
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades	660
Checking and Maintaining Tyres	
Checking Tyres	665

Wear Indicators	666
Tyre Service Life	666
Tyre and Wheel Replacement	667
Tyre Rotation	668
Snow Traction Devices	669
12-Volt Battery	670
Remote Transmitter Care	
Replacing the Button Battery	676
Climate Control System Maintenance	. 677
Cleaning	
Interior Care	680
Exterior Care	682
Accessories and Modifications	685

Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book^{*} that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 631

Types of Inspection and Maintenance

Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
 Brake Fluid P. 652
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
 Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 665
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
 ▶ Replacing Light Bulbs P. 655
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
 - Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 660

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the 12-volt battery, all High Voltage system, and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
 Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the 12-volt battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
 Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

Safety When Performing Maintenance

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
 - Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the power system is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
 - Make sure to let the power system including the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
 - ▶ Do not activate the power system unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts. When the power system is on, the engine can automatically start, or the radiator fan may start operating without the engine running.
- Do not touch the high-voltage battery and wiring (orange).

Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

About Your Maintenance Service

If the service reminder system is available in your vehicle, you are informed by the driver information interface when your vehicle's maintenance services are due. Refer to the service book that came with your vehicle for an explanation of the service item codes that appear on the display.

Service Reminder System* P. 626

If the service reminder system is not available, follow the maintenance schedules in the service book that came with your vehicle.

If your vehicle is without the service book, follow the maintenance schedule in this owner's manual.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 631

➢About Your Maintenance Service

Models with service reminder system

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer for how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country. Provides information of which service items are to be performed. Service items are represented by a code and icon. The system tells you when to take your vehicle to a dealer by days remaining.

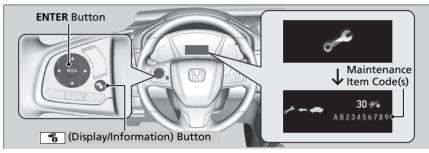
When the next maintenance service timing is near, coming or passed, a warning icon will also appear on the driver information interface every time you set the power mode to ON.

Service Reminder System*

You can choose to have a corresponding warning message displayed with the warning icon on the driver information interface.

Displaying the Service Reminder Information

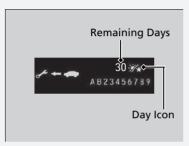
- 1. Set the power mode to ON.
- 2. Press the 👘 (display/information) button several times until 🛹 is displayed.
- **3.** Press the **ENTER** button to go to the service reminder information screen. The maintenance item(s) appears on the driver information interface.



The system message indicator () comes on along with the service reminder Information.

Displaying the Service Reminder Information

Based on engine operating conditions and engine oil conditions, the system calculates the remaining days before the next service is to be performed.



Warning Icons and Service Reminder Information on the Driver Information Interface

Warning Icon	Service Reminder Information	Explanation	Information
Service Due Soon	مرم عر	One or more of the service items are required in less than 30 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.	The remaining days will be counted down per day.
Service Due Now	→ 10:% AB23456789	One or more of the service items are required in less than 10 days. The remaining days are estimated based on your driving conditions.	Have the indicated service performed as soon as possible.
Service Over Due	→ -12:3/★ AB23456789	The indicated maintenance service is still not done after the remaining time reaches 0.	Your vehicle has passed the service required point. Immediately have the service performed and make sure to reset the service reminder system.

Service Reminder Items

Service items displayed on the driver information interface are in code and icon. For an explanation of the service reminder codes and icons, refer to the service book that came with your vehicle.

Availability of the Service Reminder System

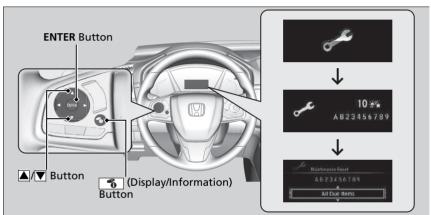
Even if the service reminder information appears on the driver information interface while pressing the (display/information) button, this system is not available in some countries. Refer to the service book that came with your vehicle, or ask a dealer if you can use the service reminder system.

Availability of the Service Reminder System

If you are planning to take your vehicle outside the service reminder system applied countries, consult a dealer on how to record your service reminder information and schedule your maintenance service under the conditions of that country.

Resetting the Display

Reset the service reminder information display if you have performed the maintenance service.



- 1. Set the power mode to ON.
- 2. Press the 👘 (display/information) button several times until 🖋 is displayed.
- 3. Press the ENTER button.
- 4. Press and hold the ENTER button for about 10 seconds to enter the reset mode.
- Press ▲/▼ button to select a maintenance item to reset, or to select All Due Items (You can also select Cancel to end the process).
- 6. Press the ENTER button to reset the selected item.
- 7. Repeat from step 4 for other items you wish to reset.

Resetting the Display

NOTICE

Failure to reset the service reminder information after a maintenance service results in the system showing incorrect maintenance intervals, which can lead to serious mechanical problems.

Models with Display Audio

You can reset also the service reminder system information display using the audio/information screen.

Customized Features P. 400

The dealer will reset the service reminder information display after completing the required maintenance service. If someone other than a dealer performs maintenance service, reset the service reminder information display yourself. If your vehicle comes with the service book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the service book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

Except European and Ukrainian models

Service at the indicated distance or	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
time - whichever comes first.	miles X 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
time - whichever comes hist.	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil ^{*1}	Normal			Every	10,000) km (6,	000 mi	les) or 1	year		
	Severe			Every	5,000 k	m (3,00	0 miles	s) or 6 m	nonths		
Replace engine oil filter ^{*1}	Normal			Every 2	20,000	km (12,	,500 mi	les) or 2	2 years		
	Severe Every 10,000 km (6,000 miles) or 1 year										
Replace air cleaner element				E	very 30	,000 kn	n (18,50	00 miles	s)		
Inspect valve clearance				Ev	ery 120	,000 kn	n (75,00	00 miles	5)* ²		
Replace fuel filter	Normal			Ev	ery 210	,000 kn	n (131,0	000 mil	es)		
	Severe Every 130,000 km (81,000 miles)*3										
Replace spark plugs	Every 100,000 km (62,500 miles)										
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km (125,000 miles) or 10 years,										
			there	eafter ev	very 100),000 k	m (62,5	500 mile	es) or 5 <u>y</u>	years	

*1:Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to the local warranty booklet.

*2:Sensory Method Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km (75,000 miles) if they are noisy.
*3:It is recommended to replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Service at the indicated distance or	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
time - whichever comes first.	miles X 1,000	12.5	25.0	37.5	50.0	62.5	75.0	87.5	100.0	112.5	125.0
time - whichever comes hist.	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid				Every	80,000	km (50	,000 mi	les) or 4	4 years		
Replace rear differential fluid	AWD	•				•				٠	
Inspect front and rear brakes				Every 1	0,000 l	km (6,0	00 mile	s) or 6 r	months		
Replace brake fluid						Every 3	3 years				
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	٠	•
Check expiry date for temporary tyre repair kit bottle						Every	/ year				
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and comper month)	ndition at least once				Every 10	0,000 k	m (6,00	0 miles)		
	Visually insp	ect the	follow	ing ite	ms:						
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boot	S										
Suspension components				Every 1	0,000 l	km (6,0	00 mile	s) or 6 r	months		
Driveshaft boots											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)											
All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system						-	-				
Fuel lines and connections											

Ukrainian models

Service at the indicated distance or time	km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195
- whichever comes first.	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144	156
Replace engine oil	Normal	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
	Severe					Every	7,500) km c	or 6 m	onths				
Replace engine oil filter	Normal	•	•	٠	•	•	٠	٠	٠	٠	•	٠	•	•
	Severe					Every	7,500) km c	r 6 m	onths				
Replace air cleaner element							Every	30,00	0 km					
Inspect valve clearance ^{*1}							Every	120,0	00 km					
Replace fuel filter	Normal						Every	210,0	00 km					
	Severe					E	ivery 1	20,00	0 km*	2				
Replace spark plugs	Every 120,000 km (Inspect: 15,000 km)													
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years													

*1:Sensory method

Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy. *2:It is recommended to replace the fuel filter if the fuel you are using is suspected to be contaminated with dust, etc. because the filter may be clogged sooner.

Service at the indicated distance or time	km X 1,000	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195
- whichever comes first.	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120	132	144	156
Replace transmission fluid						Every	75,0	00 km	or 5	years				
Replace rear differential fluid	AWD		•						•					
Inspect front and rear brakes		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Replace brake fluid							Eve	ry 3 ye	ears					
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check lights alignment		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Test drive (noise, stability, dashboard operation)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Check expiry date for temporary tyre repair kit bottle		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)							Every	15,00)0 km					
	Visually in	spect	the f	ollow	ing it	ems:								
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots														
Suspension components														
Driveshaft boots														
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid														
Exhaust system														
Fuel lines and connections														

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and filter	A, B, C, D and E

Maintenance Schedule*

The condition is considered as severe when you drive: A. Less than 8 km (5 miles), or less than 16 km (10 miles) in freezing temperatures per trip. B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.

C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-andgo.

D. With a trailer towing, or loaded roof rack, or in mountains.

E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

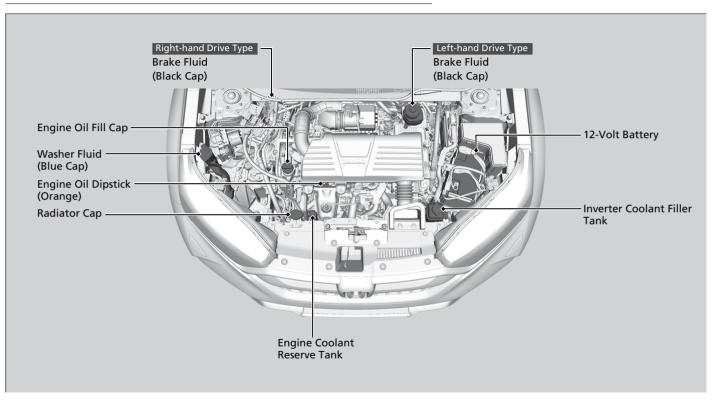
Except European and Ukrainian models

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
20,000 km 12,500 Mi. (or 12 Mo.)			
40,000 km 25,000 Mi. (or 24 Mo.)			
60,000 km 37,500 Mi. (or 36 Mo.)			
80,000 km 50,000 Mi. (or 48 Mo.)			
100,000 km 62,500 Mi. (or 60 Mo.)			
120,000 km 75,000 Mi. (or 72 Mo.)			
140,000 km 87,500 Mi. (or 84 Mo.)			
160,000 km 100,000 Mi. (or 96 Mo.)			
180,000 km 112,500 Mi. (or 108 Mo.)			
200,000 km 125,000 Mi. (or 120 Mo.)			

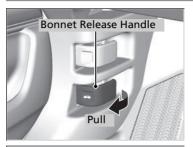
Ukrainian models

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
15,000 km (or 12 Mo.)			
30,000 km (or 24 Mo.)			
45,000 km (or 36 Mo.)			
60,000 km (or 48 Mo.)			
75,000 km (or 60 Mo.)			
90,000 km (or 72 Mo.)			
105,000 km (or 84 Mo.)			
120,000 km (or 96 Mo.)			
135,000 km (or 108 Mo.)			
150,000 km (or 120 Mo.)			
165,000 km (or 132 Mo.)			
180,000 km (or 144 Mo.)			
195,000 km (or 156 Mo.)			

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



Opening the Bonnet



- **1.** Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
- **2.** Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard
 - ► The bonnet will pop up slightly.
- **3.** Push the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) to the side and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.

➢Opening the Bonnet

The bonnet support rod can become very hot due to heat from the engine.

To ensure against possible burns, do not handle the metal section of the rod: Use the foam grip instead.

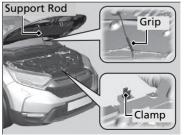
NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.





4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

Maintenance

➢Opening the Bonnet



- Grab the foam.
- The support rod gets very hot.Refer to the owner's manual.

Recommended Engine Oil

Use a genuine engine oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable type and viscosity (for the ambient temperature) as shown in the image that follows.

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

European and Ukrainian models

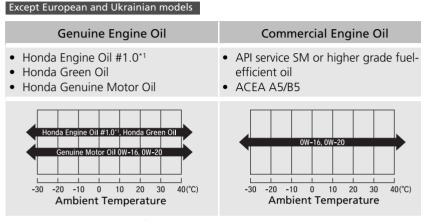
Genuine Engine Oil	Commercial Engine Oil
 Honda Engine Oil #1.0*1 Honda Green Oil Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0 Honda Genuine Motor Oil 	 API service SM or higher grade fuel- efficient oil ACEA A5/B5
Honda Engine Oil #1.0", Honda Green Oil Honda Engine Oil Type 2.0 Genuine Motor Oil 0W-16, 0W-20 -30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40(°C) Ambient Temperature	-30 -20 -10 0 10 20 30 40(°C) Ambient Temperature

*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

➢Recommended Engine Oil

Engine Oil Additives

Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.



*1:Formulated to improve fuel economy.

Oil Check

We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel. Park the vehicle on level ground.

Turn off the power system. You can check the oil level without the engine having run beforehand. If the engine has been running, wait approximately three minutes before you check the oil.

- **1.** Remove the dipstick (orange).
- **2.** Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
- **3.** Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

≫0il Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

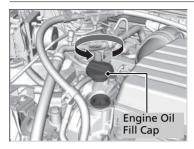
The amount of oil consumed depends on how the vehicle is driven and the climatic and road conditions encountered. The rate of oil consumption can be up to 1 litre per 1,000 km/625 miles.

Consumption is likely to be higher when the engine is new.

• — Upper Mark • — Lower Mark

4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

Adding Engine Oil



- **1.** Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
- 2. Add oil slowly.
- **3.** Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
- **4.** Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

➢Adding Engine Oil

NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil can result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

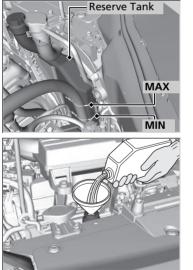
Cooling System

Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the engine coolant reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

Reserve Tank



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
- **2.** Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
 - If the coolant level is below the MIN mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the MAX mark.
- 3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.

➢Cooling System

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

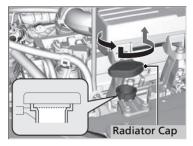
NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

Radiator



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
- **2.** Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
- **3.** Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
- **4.** The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
- **5.** Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

≫Radiator

NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

Radiator Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.Relief pressure valve begins to open at 108 kPa.

Inverter Coolant

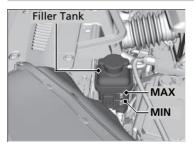
Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the inverter coolant level every time you refuel.

Have a dealer replace inverter coolant.

Checking the Coolant



- **1.** Check the fluid level in the tank.
- 2. If the coolant level has dropped below the **MIN** level, have your vehicle serviced at a dealer.
 - Only a properly trained technician can refill the coolant and check the system for leaks.

➢Inverter Coolant

NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below -30°C are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the motor components.

Inverter Coolant Filler Tank Cap



- Never open when hot.
- Hot coolant will scald you.
- Relief pressure valve begins to open at 49 kPa.

Transmission Fluid

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

Specified fluid: Honda ATF DW-1

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary.

Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 631

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

NOTICE

Do not mix Honda ATF DW-1 with other transmission fluids.

Using a transmission fluid other than Honda ATF DW-1 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

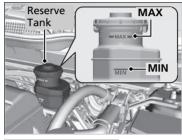
Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda ATF DW-1 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

Brake Fluid

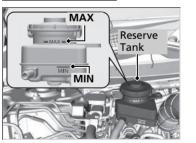
Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

Checking the Brake Fluid

Left-hand Drive Type



Right-hand Drive Type



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

≫Brake Fluid

NOTICE

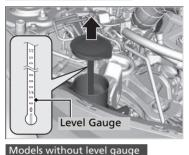
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Models with level gauge



Check the amount of window washer fluid using the washer fluid level gauge on the cap.

If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

If the washer fluid is low, a symbol appears on the driver information interface.

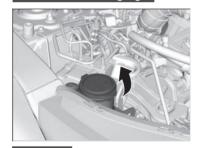
➢Refilling Window Washer Fluid

NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump.

Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid.

Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.



All models Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

≫Fuel Filter

Models with service reminder system

The fuel filter should be replaced according to the service reminder indication.

Replacing Light Bulbs

Headlights

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Fog Lights

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

➢Headlights

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Position/Daytime Running Lights

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Active Cornering Lights*

Active cornering lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Front Turn Signal Lights

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Brake/Taillight and Rear Turn Signal Lights

Brake/taillight and rear turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Taillight: LED Back-Up Light: 16 W



Bulb

- **1.** Remove the cover by prying on the edge using a flat-tip screwdriver.
 - ► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

- **2.** Turn the socket to the left and remove it. Remove the old bulb.
- 3. Insert a new bulb.

➢Taillight and Back-Up Light Bulbs

Taillights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Licence Plate Light

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

High-Mount Brake Light

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Rear Fog Light

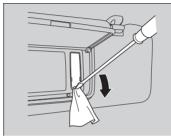
Rear fog light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

Other Light Bulbs

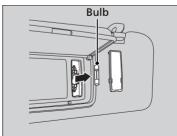
Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W



- **1.** Pry on the edge of the cover using a flattip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

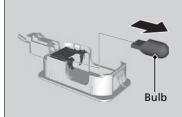
Luggage Area Light Bulbs

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

Luggage Area Light: 5 W



- **1.** Pry on the edge of the cover using a flattip screwdriver to remove the cover.
 - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

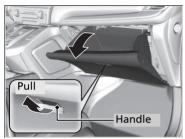


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

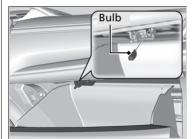
Glove Box Light Bulb*

When replacing, use the following bulb.

Glove Box Light: 3.4 W



1. Open the glove box.



2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

* Not available on all models

Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



- **1.** Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- **2.** While holding the wiper switch in the
- **MIST** position, set the power mode to ON, then to VEHICLE OFF.
 - Both wiper arms are set to the maintenance position as shown in the image.
- 3. Lift both wiper arms.

➢Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

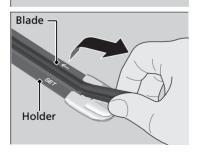
NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.



4. Press and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

5. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.

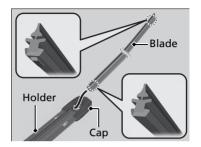


Blade

Tab

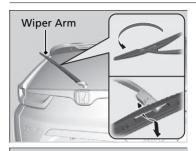
End Cap At -The Bottom

6. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.



- **7.** Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.
- **8.** Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.
- **9.** Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.
- **10.** Lower both wiper arms.
- **11.** Set the power mode to ON and hold the wiper switch in the **MIST** position until both wiper arms return to the standard position.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

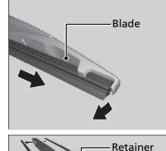


- **1.** Raise the wiper arm off.
- **2.** Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.

Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

NOTICE

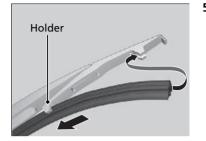
Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.



3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.

4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

Continued



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1–0.2 bar, 1–2 psi) per month.

Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems. Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

Wear Indicators P. 666

• Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

➢Checking Tyres

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

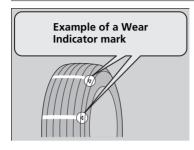
Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km (1 mile). If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30–40 kPa (0.3–0.4 bar, 4–6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

Deflation Warning System P. 531

Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is 1.6 mm (1/16 inch) shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre. **Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

➢Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

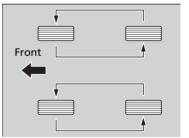
Tyre Rotation

Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

Tyres without rotation marks

Front

Tyres with rotation marks

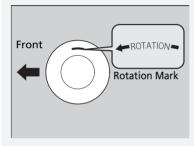


Rotate the tyres as shown here.

Rotate the tyres as shown here.

■Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

Deflation Warning System P. 531

Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Original Tyre Size ^{*1}	Chain Type
235/60R18 103H	RUD-matic classic 4716134

- *1:Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.
- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

Snow Traction Devices

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

According to the EEC Directive for tyres, when winter tyres are used, it is necessary to affix a sticker with the allowable max. speed of the winter tyres clearly in the field of view of the driver, if the designed max. speed of vehicle is higher than the allowed max. speed of winter tyre. A sticker is obtainable from your tyre dealer. If you have any question, consult a dealer.

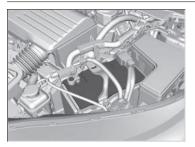
When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

Checking the 12-Volt Battery



The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

• The audio system is disabled.

Reactivating the audio system P. 289

• The clock resets.

2 Clock P. 180

The immobilizer system needs to be reset.
 Immobilizer System Indicator P. 112

≫12-Volt Battery

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

≥12-Volt Battery

Emergency Procedures

Eyes: Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately. Skin: Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

Swallowing: Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

Charging the 12-Volt Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative (-) cable first, and reconnect it last.

12-Volt Battery

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), Road Departure Mitigation, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), Parking Brake and Brake System (Amber), and Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System may come on along with a message in the Driver Information Interface when you set the power mode to ON after reconnecting the 12-volt battery.

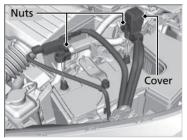
Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

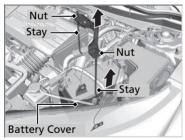
Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

When you remove and replace the 12-volt battery, always follow the maintenance safety and the warnings for when checking the battery to prevent potential hazards.

Maintenance Safety P. 623

Checking the 12-Volt Battery P. 670





- **1.** Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Open the bonnet
- **2.** Loosen the nut on the negative battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the negative (--) terminal.
- **3.** Open the positive battery terminal cover. Loosen the nut on the positive battery cable, then disconnect the cable from the positive (+) terminal.
- **4.** Loosen the nut on each side of the battery bracket with a wrench.
- 5. Pull the bottom end of each battery stay out of the hole on the battery base, and remove the combination of the battery bracket and the stays.
- 6. Remove the battery cover.

≥ Replacing the 12-Volt Battery

NOTICE

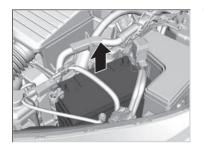
An improperly disposed of battery can be harmful to the environment and human health. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



To install a new battery, reverse this procedure.

Always disconnect the negative (–) cable first, and reconnect it last.



7. Take out the battery carefully.

Battery Label



Example

Battery Label

DANGER

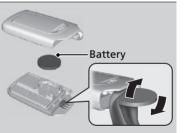
- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.

Keyless Remote

~	



Battery type: CR2032

1. Remove the built-in key.

- **2.** Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
 - Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
 - ► Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
- **3.** Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.

➢Replacing the Button Battery

CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

A warning mark is located adjacent to the button battery*.

NOTICE

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

This symbol on the battery means that this product must not be treated as household waste.



Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

Air Conditioning

For proper and safe operation of the climate control system, the refrigerant system should only be served by a qualified technician.

Never repair or replace the air conditioning evaporator (cooling coil) with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

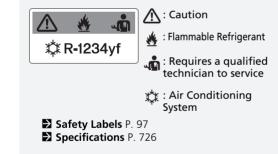
Sclimate Control System Maintenance

NOTICE

Vented refrigerant is harmful to the environment. To avoid refrigerant from venting, never replace the evaporator with one removed from a used or salvaged vehicle.

Refrigerant in your vehicle's air conditioning system is flammable and can be ignited during servicing if proper procedures are not followed.

The air conditioner label is found under the bonnet:



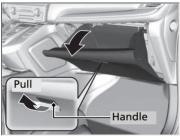
Dust and Pollen Filter

When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

Maintenance Schedule* P. 631

How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



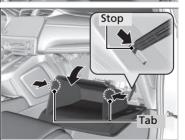
1. Open the glove box.

Dust and Pollen Filter

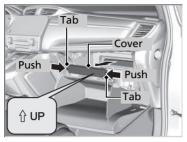
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

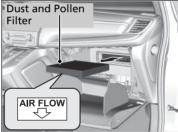
If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.



- **2.** Disengage the two tabs by pushing on each side panel, then push down the stop.
- **3.** Pivot the glove box out of the way.



4. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.



- **5.** Remove the filter from the case.
- **6.** Install a new filter in the case.
 - Put the AIR FLOW arrow directed side down.

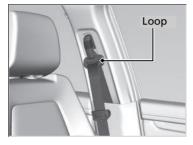
Cleaning

Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth. Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt. Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts. Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchors using a clean cloth.



➢Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

To properly clean leather:

- **1.** Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
- **2.** Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
- 3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
- 4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

➢Cleaning the Window

Wires are mounted to the inside of the rear window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of both the front sensor camera and the rainfall/light sensor*.

Maintaining Genuine Leather*

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.
- Turn off the automatic intermittent wipers*.

Using High Pressure Cleaners

- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

r scratches Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



If you need to lift the wiper arms away from the windscreen, first set the wiper arms to the maintenance position.

Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber P. 660

■Using an Automated Car Wash

When using an automated car wash that pulls the vehicle through with a conveyor, make sure vehicle is in car wash mode.

If you want to keep the transmission in N position (car wash mode) P. 508

682 * Not available on all models

Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

➢Applying Wax

NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

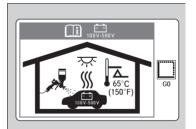
Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Painting the Vehicle



High temperature may damage the highvoltage battery used to power the electric motor.

When painting the vehicle in a heated paint booth, make sure the temperature does not exceed 65° C.

Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windscreen. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.

Fuses P. 716

• Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

Accessories and Modifications

Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.

Use of improperly designed, engineered or manufactured high-voltage battery assemblies could cause a fire in your vehicle.

A vehicle fire could result in a crash or injury.

Only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly, or its equivalent, in your vehicle.

Modifications

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair your vehicle's high-voltage hybrid power system or otherwise modify vehicle electrical systems. Disassembling or modifying electrical equipment can result in a crash or a fire.

If you ever need to replace your vehicle's high-voltage battery assembly outside of warranty coverage, we highly recommend that you only use a genuine Honda high-voltage battery assembly. Genuine Honda high-voltage battery assemblies are designed to work with your vehicle's hybrid power system and have been designed, engineered and manufactured to avoid overcharging situations. Non-genuine high-voltage battery assemblies may not have been similarly designed, engineered and manufactured, and installation of such assemblies could result in overcharging, fires, loss of power, or other conditions that may increase the likelihood of a crash or injury.

Accessories and Modifications

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, twoway radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.

Tools

Types of Tools	688
If a Tyre Goes Flat	
Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre	689
Handling of the Jack	699
Power System Won't Start	
Checking the Procedure	701
If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak.	. 702
Emergency Power System Off	703
Jump Starting	704
Overheating	
How to Handle Overheating	706

Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes
On
If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System
Indicator Comes On709
If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes
On or Blinks710
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes
On or Blinks711
If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes
On or Blinks at the Same Time When the
Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes
On712

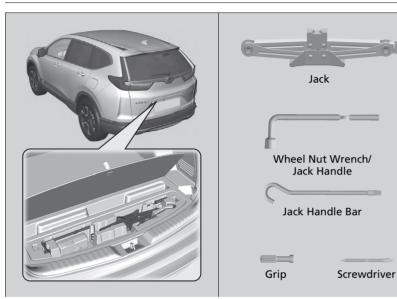
If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System
Indicator Comes On 713
If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning
System Indicator Comes On or Blinks714
If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears715
If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks
along with the Warning Message 715

Fuses

When You Cannot Open the Tailgate	. 723
Emergency Towing	722
Inspecting and Changing Fuses	721
Fuse Locations	716

Tools

Types of Tools



➢Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area.

If a Tyre Goes Flat

Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

If the tyre has a large cut or is otherwise severely damaged, you will need to have the vehicle towed. If the tyre only has a small puncture, from a nail for instance, you can use the temporary tyre repair kit so that you can drive to the nearest service station for a more permanent repair.

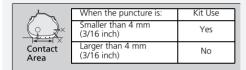
If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then stop in a safe place.

- **1.** Park the vehicle on a firm, level, and non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
- **2.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- **3.** Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
 - When towing a trailer, unhitch the trailer.

➢Temporarily Repairing a Flat Tyre

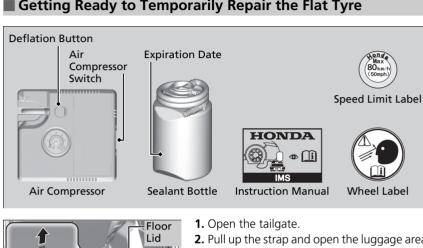
The kit should not be used in the following situations. Instead, contact a dealer or a roadside assistant to have the vehicle towed.

- The tyre sealant has expired.
- More than one tyre is punctured.
- The puncture or cut is larger than 4 mm (3/16 inch).
- The tyre side wall is damaged or the puncture is outside the contact area.

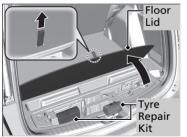


- Damage has been caused by driving with the tyres extremely under inflated.
- The tyre bead is no longer seated.
- A rim is damaged.

Do not remove a nail or screw that punctured the tyre. If you remove it from the tyre, you may not be able to repair the puncture using the kit.



Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

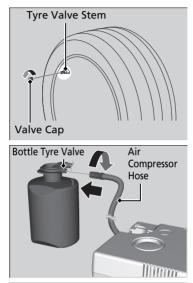


- **2.** Pull up the strap and open the luggage area floor lid
- **3.** Take the kit out of the case
- 4. Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side

Setting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre

When making a temporary repair, carefully read the instruction manual provided with the kit.

Injecting Sealant and Air





1. Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.

2. Shake the sealant bottle

compressor.

3. Attach the air compressor hose onto the bottle tyre valve. Screw it until it is tight.

4. Upside down the sealant bottle, then

attach the bottle into the cutout of the air

5. Attach the sealant/air hose onto the tyre valve stem. Screw it until it is tight.

Injecting Sealant and Air

Tyre sealant contains substances that are harmful and can be fatal if swallowed

If accidentally swallowed, do not induce vomiting. Drink plenty of water and get medical attention immediately.

For skin or eye contact, flush with cool water and get medical attention if necessary.

Keep the sealant bottle out of the reach of children.

In cold temperatures, the sealant may not flow easily. In this situation, warm it up for five minutes before usina.

The sealant is latex based and can permanently stain clothing and other materials. Be careful during handling and wipe up any spills immediately.





- **6.** Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

Accessory Power Sockets P. 268

7. Turn the power system on.

■ Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 96

- **8.** Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre.
 - The compressor starts injecting sealant and air into the tyre.
- **9.** After the air pressure reaches to specified pressure, turn off the kit.

➢Injecting Sealant and Air

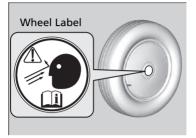
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.

Until the sealant injection is complete, the pressure shown on the pressure gauge will appear higher than actual. After the sealant injection is complete the pressure will drop and then begin to rise again as the tyre is inflated with air. This is normal. To accurately measure the air pressure using the gauge, turn the air compressor off only after the sealant injection is complete.



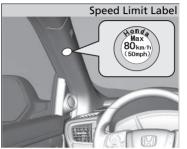
- **10.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
- **11.** Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- **12.** Apply the wheel label to the flat surface of the wheel.
 - ► The wheel surface must be clean to ensure the label adheres properly.

➢Injecting Sealant and Air

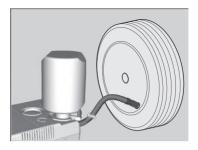
If the required air pressure is not reached within 10 minutes, the tyre may be too severely damaged for the kit to provide the necessary seal and your vehicle will need to be towed.

See a Honda dealer for a replacement sealant bottle and proper disposal of an empty bottle.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

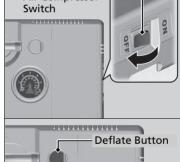


- **1.** Apply the speed limit label to the location as shown.
- **2.** Drive the vehicle for about 10 minutes.
 - ▶ Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
- **3.** Stop the vehicle in a safe place.



- **4.** Recheck the air pressure using the gauge on the air compressor.
 - Do not turn the air compressor on to check the pressure.
- **5.** If the air pressure is:
 - Less than 120 kPa (1.2 bar, 18 psi): Do not add air or continue driving. The leak is too severe. Call for help and have your vehicle towed.
 - Emergency Towing P. 722
 - Front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/rear: 220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi) or more: Continue driving for another 10 minutes or until you reach the nearest service station. Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).
 - If the air pressure does not go down after the 10 minute driving, you do not need to check the pressure any more.





Air Pressure Gauge

• Greater than 120 kPa (1.2 bar, 18 psi), but less than front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/rear: 220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi): Turn the air compressor on to inflate the tyre until the tyre pressure reaches front: 240 kPa (2.4 bar, 35 psi)/rear: 220 kPa (2.2 bar, 32 psi).

Dinjecting Sealant and Air P. 691 Then drive carefully for 10 more minutes or until you reach the nearest service station.

Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).

- You should repeat this procedure as long as the air pressure is within this range.
- **6.** Unplug the kit from the accessory power socket.
- **7.** Unscrew the sealant/air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- **8.** Press the deflate button until the gauge returns to 0 kPa (0 bar, 0 psi).
- **9.** Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Distributing the Sealant in the Tyre

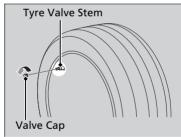
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

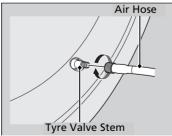
Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

You can use the kit to inflate a non-punctured under-inflated tyre.







- Take the kit out of the luggage area.
 ☑ Getting Ready to Temporarily Repair the Flat Tyre P. 690
- **2.** Place the kit, face up, on flat ground near the flat tyre, away from traffic. Do not place the kit on its side.
- 3. Remove the air hose from the kit.
- **4.** Remove the valve cap from the tyre valve stem.
- **5.** Attach the air hose onto the tyre valve stem.

Screw it until it is tight.

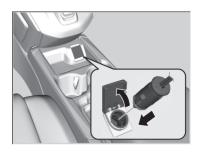
Inflating an Under-inflated Tyre

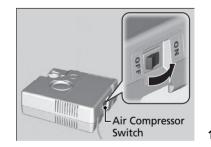
Running the engine with the vehicle in an enclosed or even partly enclosed area can cause a rapid build-up of toxic carbon monoxide.

Breathing this colourless, odourless gas can cause unconsciousness and even death. Only run the engine to power the air compressor with the vehicle outdoors.

NOTICE

Do not operate the temporary tyre repair kit compressor for more than 15 minutes. The compressor can overheat and become permanently damaged.





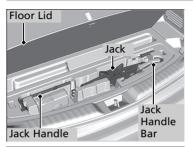
- **6.** Plug in the compressor to the accessory power socket.
 - Be careful not to pinch the cord in a door or window.

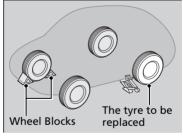
Accessory Power Sockets P. 268

- 7. Turn the power system on.
 - In freezing temperatures, start the engine and leave it running while the flat tyre is being serviced.
 - Carbon Monoxide Gas P. 96
- **8.** Turn the air compressor switch on to inflate the tyre.
 - The compressor starts to inject air into the tyre.
 - If you have started the engine, leave it running while injecting air.
- **9.** Inflate the tyre to the specified air pressure.
- 10. Turn off the kit.
 - Check the pressure gauge on the air compressor.
 - ▶ If overinflated, press the deflate button.
- **11.** Unplug the power plug from the accessory power socket.
- **12.** Unscrew the air hose from the tyre valve stem. Reinstall the valve cap.
- **13.** Repackage and properly stow the kit.

Handling of the Jack

How to Set Up the Jack





- **1.** Park the vehicle on firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
- **2.** Put the transmission into **P**.
- **3.** Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.
- 4. Open the luggage area floor lid.
- **5.** Take the jack, jack handle and jack handle bar out of the luggage area.
- **6.** Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

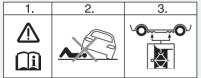
➢How to Set Up the Jack

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

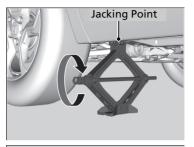
Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

WARNING: The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.



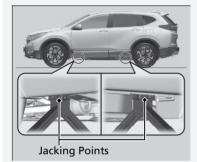
- 1. See Owner's Manual.
- 2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
- 3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



- **7.** Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.
- **8.** Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in image until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.
 - Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.
- **9.** Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

➢How to Set Up the Jack

The position to use a jack as follows:

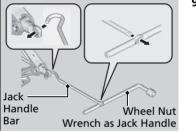


Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.



Checking the Procedure

When the ready indicator does not come on and see a does not appear on the driver information interface, check the following items and take appropriate action.

Checking the Procedure

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it. Jump Starting P. 704

Checklist	Condition	What to Do
Check if the related indicator or driver	₩F appears.	Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 123
information interface messages come on.	 appears. Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range. POWER Button Operating Range P. 220 	If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak P. 702
	The power system indicator comes on.	Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.
	The transmission system indicator blinks and 🛞 🔞 appears.	If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message P. 715
Check the brightness	The interior lights are dim or do not come on at all.	Have the 12-volt battery checked by a dealer.
of the interior lights.	The interior lights come on normally.	Check all fuses, or have your vehicle checked by a dealer. Inspecting and Changing Fuses P. 721
Check the shift position.	The transmission is not in P.	Put the transmission into P .
• •	stem starting procedure. s, and try to start the power system again.	Turning on the Power P. 498
Check the immobilizer system indicator.	When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the power system cannot be turned on.	Immobilizer System Indicator P. 112

If you cannot turn on the power system after checking all the items in the list above, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds and regard appears on the driver information interface, the **POWER** button flashes, and the ready indicator does not come on. Turn on the power system as follows:



- POWER
- Touch the centre of the **POWER** button with the **H** logo on the keyless remote while the **POWER** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
 The **POWER** button flashes for about 30 seconds.
 - Depress the brake pedal and press the POWER button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the POWER button changes from flashing to on.
 - ► The ready indicator comes on.
 - If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to ACCESSORY.

Emergency Power System Off

The **POWER** button may be used to turn the power system off due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must turn the power system off, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **POWER** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **POWER** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

The shift position automatically changes to \mathbf{P} after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then, the power mode changes to VEHICLE OFF.

Emergency Power System Off

Do not press the **POWER** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the power system to be turned off.

If you press the **POWER** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the power system, then open the bonnet.

• Terminal

Booster Battery

 Open the terminal cover on your vehicle's 12-volt battery positive ⊕ terminal.

- 2. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's 12-volt battery ⊕ terminal.
- 3. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
 - Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
 - When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15 volts. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
- **4.** Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.

∭Jump Starting

A 12-volt battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

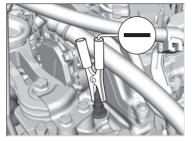
Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the 12-volt battery.

NOTICE

If a 12-volt battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen 12-volt battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

12-volt battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.



- **5.** Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
- **6.** If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the assisting vehicle's engine and increase its rpm slightly.
- **7.** Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

- **1.** Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
- **2.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \bigcirc terminal.
- 3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's 12-volt battery \oplus terminal.
- **4.** Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery \oplus terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

What to Do After the Engine Starts

The indicators for the Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF), road departure mitigation system, Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system, VSA OFF, Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), and low tyre pressure/deflation warning system may come on along with a message in the driver information interface when you turn the power system on after reconnecting the 12-volt battery. Drive a short distance at more than 20 km/h (12 mph). The indicator should go off. If it does not, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- **Solution** appears on the driver information interface.
- E appears on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

Appears on the Driver Information Interface

appears on the driver information interface when the power system temperature is high.

Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 123

- 1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
 - ▶ Put the transmission into P, and set the parking brake. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
- 2. Keep the power mode in ON, and wait until the symbol disappears.
 - ▶ If the symbol does not disappear, have your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

Appears on the Driver Information Interface

First thing to do

- **1.** Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
- 2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
 - ▶ No steam or spray present: Keep the power system on and open the bonnet.
 - Steam or spray is present: Turn off the power system and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

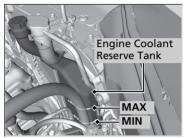
Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

NOTICE

Continuing to drive with <u>E</u> on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

Next thing to do



- 1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and turn the power system off once $\underline{\mathbb{R}}$ on the driver information interface disappears.
 - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately turn the power system off.
- **2.** Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
 - ► If the coolant level in the engine coolant reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
 - If there is no coolant in the engine coolant reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

■ Appears on the Driver Information Interface

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, turn the power system on. If $\underline{\mathbb{L}}$ does not appear, resume driving. If it appears again, contact a dealer for repairs.

If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On



Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the engine oil pressure is low.

■ What to do as soon as the indicator comes on

- 1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
- 2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

What to do after parking the vehicle

- **1.** Turn the power system off and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
- **2.** Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

Oil Check P. 644

- **3.** Start the engine and check the low oil pressure indicator.
 - ► The indicator goes off: Start driving again.
 - The indicator does not go off within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On



Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the 12-volt battery is not being charged.

What to do when the indicator comes on

Turn off the climate control system, rear demister, and other electrical systems. Immediately contact a dealer for repairs.

➢If the Low Oil Pressure Indicator Comes On

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

▶ If the 12-Volt Battery Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn the power system off. Turning on the power system may rapidly discharge the 12-volt battery.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on if there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h (30 mph) or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks



Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using regenerative braking.

Reasons for the indicator to blink

- There is a problem with the electric parking brake system.
- What to do when the indicator blinks
- Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks

Have your vehicle repaired immediately. It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary, use the deceleration paddle selector to slower your vehicle's speed.

Deceleration Paddle Selector P. 511

If the brake system indicator and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking.

Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work.

Avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On P. 712

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On



If the brake system indicator (red) comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, release the parking brake manually or automatically
 ▶ Parking Brake P. 595



- If the brake system indicator (red) continuously comes on or blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, stop the vehicle in a safe place and have it inspected by a dealer immediately.
 - Preventing the vehicle from moving Put the transmission into P.
 - If only the brake system indicator (red) is turned off, avoid using the parking brake and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On or Blinks at the Same Time When the Brake System Indicator (Amber) Comes On

If you apply the parking brake, you may not be able to release it.

If the brake system indicator (red) and the brake system indicator (amber) come on at the same time, the parking brake is working.

If the brake system indicator (red) blinks at the same time when the brake system indicator (amber) comes on, the parking brake may not work because it is checking the system.

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS system.
- If you depress the accelerator pedal repeatedly to increase the engine speed while the engine is idling, the indicator comes on, and sometimes the steering wheel becomes harder to operate.

What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and turn on the power system again. If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been initialised. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully avoiding abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

Initialise the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 531

What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

If the Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears



Reasons for the symbol to appear

Appears when the engine oil level is low.

What to do as soon as the symbol appears

- 1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
- 2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

What to do after parking the vehicle

- 1. Stop the engine and let it sit for about three minutes.
- 2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.

Dil Check P. 644

➢If the Low Oil Level Symbol Appears

NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil level can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

This system activates after the engine warms up. If the outside temperature is extremely low, you may have to drive for a long time until the system senses the engine oil level.

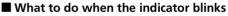
If the symbol appears again, stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs immediately.

If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message



Reasons for the indicator to blink

The transmission is malfunctioning.



• Immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

If the Transmission System Indicator Blinks along with the Warning Message

You may not be able to turn on the power system.

Make sure to set the parking brake when parking your vehicle.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

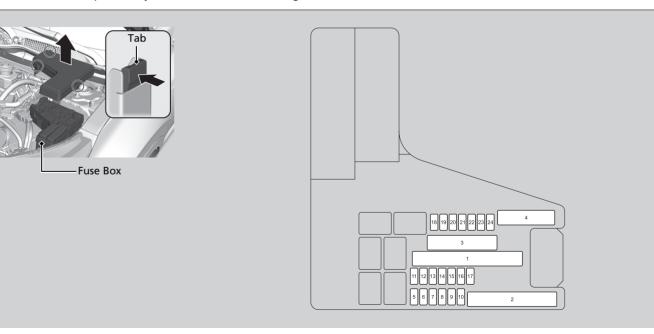
Emergency Towing P. 722

Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box Type A

Located near 12-volt battery. Push the tabs to open the box. Fuse locations are shown on the image below. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



Circuit	protected	and	fuse	rating
---------	-----------	-----	------	--------

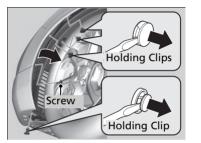
	Circuit Protected	Amps
	OP BLOCK 2	40 A
	ESB	40 A
	ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
1	R/MOD1	30 A
	IG MAIN 2	30 A
	R/MOD2	30 A
	MAIN FUSE	150 A
	EPS	70 A
	IG MAIN	30 A
2	FUSE BOX OPTION	40 A
2	FUSE BOX MAIN	60 A
	WIPER	30 A
	P-ACT	30 A
	REAR DEMISTER	40 A
	HEADLIGHT WASHER*	30 A
3	FUSE BOX MAIN2	40 A
2	ABS/VSA MOTOR	40 A
	_	—
	BLOWER MOTOR	40 A
	POWER TAIL GATE*	40 A
4	OP BLOCK 1*	40 A
4	AWD*	20 A
	REAR SEAT HEATER*	20 A
5	-	_
6	WASHER	15 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
7	IGP	15 A
8	FI SUB	15 A
9	STOP LIGHTS	10 A
10	IG HOLD 1	10 A
11	IGPS (LAF)	7.5 A
12	BACKUP FI ECU	10 A
13	PCU EWP	10 A
14	HAZARD	10 A
15	IG COIL	15 A
16	RFC RELAY COIL	5 A
17	HEATED WINDSCREEN*	15 A
18	BACK UP	10 A
19	AUDIO	15 A
20	EPT L	20 A
21	EPT R	20 A
22	FR FOG	15 A
23	A/C WATER PUMP	10 A
24	HORN	10 A
25	-	-
26	_	_
27	-	_

* Not available on all models

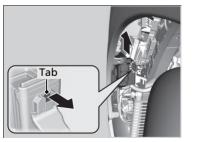
Engine Compartment Fuse Box Type B

Located inside the left side of the front bumper.

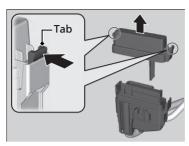


1. Turn the steering wheel to the right.

2. Remove the holding clips and screw, and pull the inner fender back.



3. Pull the tab to remove the fuse box.



4. Pull out the fuse box inside the inner fender, then push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover mark.

Circuit protected and fuse rating

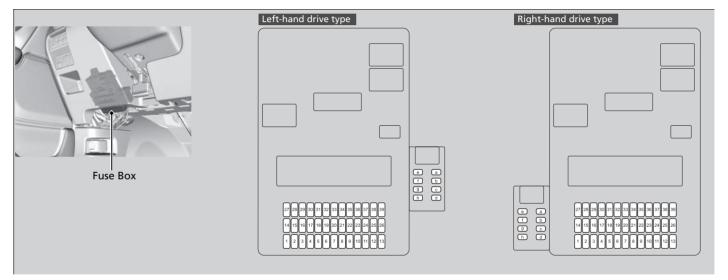
		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	li	A/C PTC1/2	(40 A)
2	<u>[]i</u>	ACCESSORY SOCKET (LUGGAGE AREA)	(20 A)
3	l	A/C PTC3/4	(40 A)
4	l	EVTC	(20 A)
5	l	Main Fan	(40 A)
6	li	Engine Water Pump	(30 A)

Interior Fuse Box

Located under the dashboard.

Fuse locations are shown on the image below.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number in the image and chart.



Handling the Unexpected

Circuit	protected	and fuse	rating
---------	-----------	----------	--------

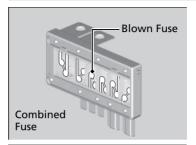
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	ACCESSORY	10 A
2	ACC KEY LOCK	5 A
3	IG1 P-DRV	5 A
4	IG1 OPTION 2	5 A
5	IG1 OPTION	10 A
6	IG1 SRS 2	10 A
7	IG1 METER	10 A
8	IG1 FUEL PUMP	15 A
9	IG2 A/C	10 A
10	CTR ACCESSORY SOCKET	20 A
11	IG1 MONITOR	5 A
12	R SIDE DOOR LOCK	10 A
13	L SIDE DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
14	P/W RR L	20 A
15	P/W AS	20 A
16	DOOR LOCK	20 A
17	IG1 TCU	10 A
18	DR POWER LUMBAR*	10 A
19	PANORAMIC GLASS ROOF*	20 A
20	IG1 STARTER	10 A
21	IG1 ACG	10 A
22	IG2 DAYTIME LIGHT	10 A
23	ACTIVE CORNERING LIGHTS*	5 A
24	+B OPTION	5 A

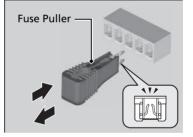
	Circuit Protected	Amps
25	DR DOOR LOCK	10 A
26	R SIDE DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
27	P/W RR R	20 A
28	P/W DR	20 A
29	FR ACCESSORY SOCKET	20 A
30	SMART	10 A
31	DR P/SEAT RECLINE*	20 A
32	FR HEATED SEAT*	20 A
33	DR P/SEAT SLIDE*	20 A
34	IG1 ABS/VSA	10 A
35	IG1 SRS	10 A
36	HAC OPTION	20 A
37	+B TRAILER	15 A
38	L SIDE DOOR LOCK	10 A
39	DR DOOR UNLOCK	10 A
а	PTG *	20 A
b	AUDIO AMP*	20 A
С	SUPER LOCKING*	15 A
d	SUNSHADE*	20 A
е	IMA 1	10 A
f	IGA 2	20 A
a	SBW ^{*1}	15 A
g	REAR FOG LIGHT*2	10 A
h	REAR FOG LIGHT*1	10 A
.,	SBW*2	15 A

*1:Right-hand drive type *2:Left-hand drive type

I

Inspecting and Changing Fuses





- **1.** Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF. Turn headlights and all accessories off.
- 2. Remove the fuse box cover.
- **3.** Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
 - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
- **4.** Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
 - If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller, and replace it with a new one.

■Inspecting and Changing Fuses

NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage.

Fuse Locations P. 716, 719

There is a fuse puller in the engine compartment fuse box type A.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

All models

Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck. **This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

2WD models

Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

Emergency Towing

NOTICE

Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

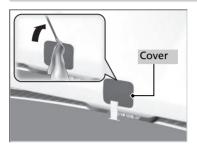
NOTICE

Improper towing, such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

Right-hand drive type

What to Do When Unable to Open the Tailgate



If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.

- **1.** Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the inside of the tailgate.
 - Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

What to Do When Unable to Open the Tailgate

Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.



2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while pushing the lever to the right.

Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

Specifications	726
Identification Numbers	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN),	
Engine Number, Motor Number and	1
Transmission Number	729
Devices that Emit Radio Waves	730
EC Declaration of Conformity Conte	nt
Outline*	754

Vehicle Specifications	
Model	CR-V
Curb Weight	1,614-1,657 kg (3,558-3,653 lbs)*1 1,672-1,726 kg (3,686-3,805 lbs)*2
Maximum Permissible Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*3} See the certification label on the front passenger's doorjamb ^{*4}
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	See the certification label on the driver's doorjamb ^{*3} See the certification label on the front passenger's doorjamb ^{*4}
*1: 2WD models	

*2: AWD models

*3: Left-hand drive type *4: Right-hand drive type

Engine Specifications

Туре	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC
Bore x Stroke	81.0 x 96.7 mm (3.19 x 3.81 in)
Displacement	1,993 cm ³ (121.6 cu-in)
Compression Ratio	13.0 : 1
Spark Plugs	NGK ILZKAR7E11S

Fuel EN 228 standards petrol/gasohol fuel Unleaded premium petrol/gasohol up to Type

E10 (90% petrol and 10% ethanol), research octane number 95 or higher Fuel Tank Capacity 57 L (12.5 Imp gal)

■ 12-V Battery

Capacity 36AH(5)/45AH(20)

Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L (2.2 Imp qt) ^{*1} 4.5 L (4.0 Imp qt) ^{*2}

*1: Right-hand drive type *2: Left-hand drive type

Light Bulbs

Headlights (H	High/Low Beam)	LED
Front Fog Lig	jhts	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights		LED
Daytime Run	ning Lights/Position Lights	LED
Active Corne	ring Lights*	LED
Side Turn Sig (on Door Mir		LED
Taillights	1010)	LED
Brake/Taillig	hts	LED
Rear Turn Sig	gnal Lights	LED
Back-Up Ligh	nts	16 W
Rear Fog Lig	ht	LED
High-Mount	Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence	Plate Light	LED
Interior Light	S	
	Front Map Light	LED
Rear Map Light		LED
Luggage Area Lights		5 W
Vanity Mirror Lights*		2 W
Glove Box Light*		3.4 W
Console Compartment Light		LED
	Foot Light(s)	LED
	Door Inner Handle Lights*	LED

Brake	Fluid
-------	-------

Specified

Brake Fluid with DOT3 or DOT4

Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda ATF DW-1	
Capacity	Change	2.2 L (1.9 Imp qt) ^{*1} 2.4 L (2.1 Imp qt) ^{*2}

*1: 2WD models

*2: AWD models

Engine Oil

	European and Uk	rainian models
Recommended	•Genuine Honda Engine •Genuine Honda Green (•Genuine Honda Engine •Genuine Honda Motor •API service SM or highe B5 0W-16, 0W-20	Oil Oil Type 2.0 Oil 0W-16, 0W-20
Kecommendeu	Except European models	and Ukrainian
	•Genuine Honda Engine •Genuine Honda Green (•Genuine Honda Motor (•API service SM or highe B5 0W-16, 0W-20	Oil Oil 0W-16, 0W-20
Capacity	Change	3.8 L (3.3 Imp qt)
capacity	Change including filter	4.1 L (3.6 Imp qt)

Rear Differential Fluid*

Specified	Honda DPSF-II	
Capacity	Change	1.2 L (1.1 Imp qt)

Engine	Coolant
Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2

Ratio	50/50 with distilled water	
	5.53 L (1.22 Imp gal)	
Capacity	(change including the remaining 0.55 L (0.12 Imp	
	gal) in the reserve tank)	

Inverter Coolant

Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type2 Specified

■ Tyre

Regular	Size	235/60R18 103H
	Pressure	See the label on driver's
		doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	18 x 7 1/2J

Honda TRK Air Compressor

A weighted emission sound pressure level	81 dB (A)
A weighted sound power level	89 dB (A)

Brake

Branc	
Туре	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Solid disc
Parking	Electric Parking Brake

Air Conditioning

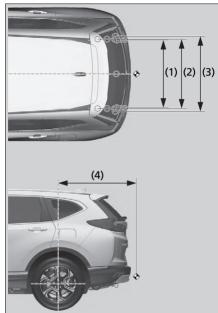
Refrigerant Type	HFO-1234yf (R-1234yf)
Charge Quantity	415 - 465 g

Vehicle Dimensions

Length		4,600 mm (181.1 in)
Width		1,855 mm (73.0 in)
		1,657 mm (65.2 in)*1
Height		1,667 mm (65.6 in)*2
Wheelbase		2,663 mm (104.8 in)*1
wneeibase		2,662 mm (104.8 in)*2
	Front	1,602 mm (63.1 in)*1
Track	Front	1,601 mm (63.0 in)*2
IIdCK	Rear 1	1,630 mm (64.2 in)*1
	Redi	1,629 mm (64.1 in)*2
*1· 2WD models		

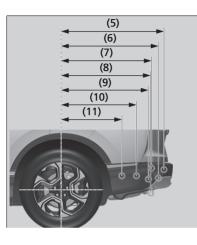
 ZVVD models *2: AWD models

The mounting point/rear over hang of coupling device



NOTE:

- 1. \bigcirc marks show towbar fixing points.
- 2. \clubsuit mark shows towbar coupling point.



No.	Dimensions
(1)	958 mm (37.7 in)
(2)	963 mm (37.9 in)
(3)	1,042 mm (41.0 in)
(4)	1,116 mm (43.9 in)
(5)	925 mm (36.4 in)*1 926 mm (36.5 in)*2
(6)	876 mm (34.5 in)*1 877 mm (34.5 in)*2
(7)	813 mm (32.0 in)*1 814 mm (32.0 in)*2
(8)	807 mm (31.8 in) ^{*1} 808 mm (31.8 in) ^{*2}
(9)	784 mm (30.9 in)' ¹ 785 mm (30.9 in)' ¹ 785 mm (30.9 in)' ² 786 mm (30.9 in)' ²
(10)	677 mm (26.7 in)*1 678 mm (26.7 in)*2
(11)	547 mm (21.5 in)*1 548 mm (21.6 in)*2

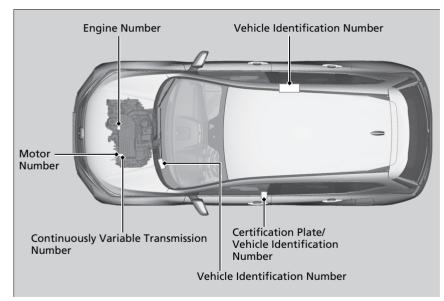
Max. Towing Weight

Trailer with brakes	750 kg (1,653 lbs)
Trailer without brakes	600 kg (1,323 lbs)
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	100 kg (220 lbs)

Identification Numbers

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number, motor number and transmission number are shown as follows.



Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number, Motor Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.

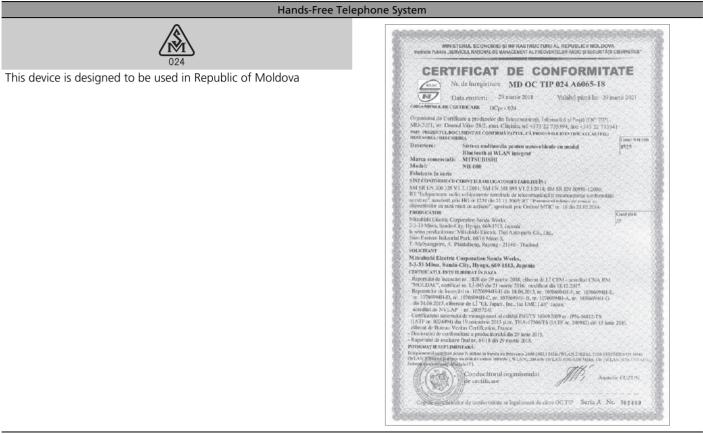


Devices that Emit Radio Waves

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

Keyless Access System		
024	Declarație de conformitate	
European REC 70-03 Gost 30786-2001 This device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova	Nai, Continental Automotive ambit, Siemensstrasse 12, 93055 Regeneburg, Germany (Derivative and Neuroperson and	

Keyless Acc	ess System
Keyless Acc 1024 European REC 70-03 Gost 30786-2001 This device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova	Declarație de conformitate Noi, Continental Automotive GmbH, Siemensstrasse 12, 93055 Regenslurg, Germany (dennine și aleas productivolii și, det este caul, de represtandul si antoriza car relacteat declarăți) declarăm pe propri noastră răspundere că produsul: marca Continental denumire comercială – tip sau modei 40373100 la care se referă acestăi declarație este în conformitate cu cerințele sențiale și celelalte prevederi aplicabile a Regelementării în tenise "Echipamente radio, echipamente terminale de elecomunicații ef 901.2014. Producul este în conformități acestora", aprobată prin Itofafrica Governului nr. 2 din 901.2014. Producul este indorule și sea documente normative: Producul este în conformități acestora", aprobată prin Itofafrica Governului nr. 2 din 901.2015. Producul este în conformități acestora", aprobată prin Itofafrica Governului nr. 2 din 901.2014. Ele 0050-12005 (2nd Edition); An 12009 - Am 22013. Siguranța utilizatorului [pct.7 Iti.a]] Ele 0050-12005 (2nd Edition); An 12009 - Am 22013. Siguranța utilizatorului [pct.7 It.a]] Ele 0050-12005 (2nd Edition); An 12009 - Am 22013. Siguranța utilizatorului [pct.7 It.a]] Ele 0050-12005 (2nd Edition); An 12009 - Am 22013. Ele 301 (483-31 VI.612 (2011-09) Ele 301 (483-31 VI.612 (2013-08).
	EN 301 489-3 V1.6.1 (2013-08) Spectrul radio (pct.8) EN 300 330-1 V1.7.1 (2010-02) Declarația de conformitate este emisă în baza Certificat de conformitate (18 August 2015 Organismul de evaluare a conformității anternat MD OC TIO 024 Dosarul tehnica le echipamentului este disponibil la Continental Automctive GmbH. Locul și data emiterii declarații Regensburg. 12 07.16 Numele (complet) al producăterului sua al persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua al persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (1111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (11111) producătorului sua a persoanei autorizate Continental Automotive GmbH Funcția (11111) funcția (11111) funcția (11111) funcția (11111) funcția (11111) funcția (111111) funcția (1111111) funcția (1111111) funcția (111111) funcția (1111111) funcția (11111111) funcția (1111111111111) funcția (1111111111) fun



Information

Hands-Free Telephone MINISTERUL ECONOMIEI SI INFRASTRUCTURII AL REPUBLICII MOLDOVA Institute Publica, SCRVICIU, NATIONAL DE MANAGEMENT AL FRECVENTEL CRIRIDIO SUSFCURITÀTIL CHERNETICE CERTIFICAT DE CONFORMITATE This device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova Nr. de inregistrare MD OC TIP 024 A6013-18 NOLTH IH. Valabil pänä la: 16 ianuarie 2021 Data emiterii 16 ianuarie 2018 ORGANISMUE DE CERTIFICARE OCDE - 024 Organismul de Certificare a produscior din Telecomunicații, înformatică și Poștă (OC TIP). MD-2021, str. Drumal Vilio: 28/2, man. Chisiniu, tel: +373/22/735394, fix: +373/22/733941 FREN FREZENTUL DOCUMENT SE CONFIRMÁ FAFTUL, CÀ PRODUSILE IDENTIFICATE ASTIVE: DENUMBREA/DESCRIPTIEA Codel NM MD Sistem multimedia pentru autovehicule cu modal 8525 Deseriere: Bluetooth integrat Marca comercială: HONDA Model: AVH-6%8ZH Fabricate in serie SINT CONFORMECU CERINT ELEOBLIGATORE STABILITE'N: SM SR EN 300 328 V1.7.1.2013; SM EN 60065:2015; RT "Eclipanene radio, echipamente terminale de telecomanicații și recunoașterea conformității acestora". aprobatil prin HG nr.1274 din 23.11.2007; RT "Parametrii termici de emise al dispozitivelor cu risti micii de actiure", aprobată prin Ordinal MTIC nr. 16 din 21.02 2014. PRODUCĂTOR Cashi treii Pioneer Corporation Car Electronics Business Group, 25-1 Azi-Nishimuchi, Yumuda, Kuwagoe-shi, Sahamu-ken 350-8555, Japan SOLICITANT Pioneer Corporation, 28-8, Honkomagome 2-chome, Bunkyo-ku, Tokyo 113-0021, Japan CERTIFICATUL ASTE FLABERAT IN BAZA - Ranortuki de incercări nr. 3782 din 02 ianarie 2018. LI CEM - acredius CNA RM "MOLDAC". certificat nr. 1.J-045 din 21 mintie 2016. Runcartelor de locercări nr. 119331635-A si rr. 1193316395-B din 05.12.2017 nr. 119331675 din 04.12.2017, eliberate de LJ "UL Japan Inc.", Japan, acreditat de "JAB" Japan - tr. RTL02610. Certificanihi sistemului de management al calitàri - ISO 9001/2008 rg. 20/02350 OM08 din 13 mai 2015, elberni de "UL DOS Inc." USA acreditit de ANAB. Declaratici de conformitate a producătorului nr. ACE17-025 din 06 decembre 2017. Reportului de evaluare fical nr. 236/17 din 12 innuarie 2018. INFORMATIE:SUPLIMENTARĂ: Echipottestal certificat poate fi utilizat în banda de liezvențe: 2400-2483,5 MHz cu puterea reasent de enicie 100 mW. Seberna de certificare: Modulul FL Conducătorul organismului Anatolie GUZUN e de certificare Senargine de conformitate se legalizenza de clare OC TIP Seria A Nr. 101415

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)/Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)
1024 SM EN301 091-1 V1.3.3 SM EN301 091-2 V1.3.2 SM EN301 489-1 V1.9.2 SM EN301 489-3 V1.6.1 SM EN55022:2014 p.5 SM SR EN 60950-1:2010 Herewith we, <i>ROBERT BOSCH GmbH</i> , declare that the submitted sample MRRevo14F for identification and laboratory tests is a representative sample of products manufactured in series. Furthermore, we confirm that it will subsequently be imported and placed on the market in Moldova.	

Blind spot information system */	Cross Traffic Monitor*
024	WINISTERUL TENNOLOGIE INFORMATE DI COMUNICATALOR AL REPUBLICI MOLDOVA Informacina do Sot, CENTRULIAFIONAL PENTRU FRELVENTE RADICI
MD OC TIP 024 A5894-17	CERTIFICAT DE CONFORMITATE
This device is designed to be used in Republic of Moldova	Image: Nr. de inregistrare MD OC TIP 024 A5894-17 Data emiteriti: 21 tube 2017 Valabili pină la: 21 tube 2020 ORGANSMUL DE CHEDREARE OCpr. 024
	Drganiard de Centicase a produssior du Teleconanicații. Informatisă și Popiii (OC 119). ND 2021 și se Dramit Văre 2802, nas. Cristiai, ul + 272 22 735364. Roc + 373 22 735364. nus rezerveru do cultări se constante arente, ca pranou serveru ca pranou serveru ca pranou presente arente arente arente arente arente arente arente arente arente arente presente arente arente Descriver Senor madar pentru autove biende \$2526 Marca conserveililis Antolia Medelic G 234734
	Fabricate în serie SIVT CONTRUME CHERINT FILEDRILLO STORIIST ABLLETEN : SME EN 55022-2014 p. 5 ERC/TEC / 2043, Auena 5: SM EN 301 489-1 V 19 2; SM EN 301 489-1 V 14 1; SM EN (6935)-12010, Reglemenarea Telriză Telripamente malo: exhloanement terminde de nicescurarionți și regruno spera confirminații acostoră, archeata părt în (re 1129 del 122 11, 2007), Reglementarea Telriză "Parametri întenzi de entisa în clopozitive cu nată trică do nefare", aprobată piri Ordinul MTIC er, 16 în 21 402 - 014.
	PROMULATION Consider Inc Auchor Descrutes Canada Inc 2335 Silicitmouri Read, Maintham, Ortario, L3R SC2, Canada
	SOLETIAN Autoliv Electronics ASP Inc., 26515 American Drive, Southfield ML 48034, USA
	 CRETERS AT LEVELE IN INFLATE VIE RATE. Responsible of macrositier, 3.6564 drift 85 diffs 2017. LTCTEM - sensition CNA RM MOLDACC, constituer in: LL-468 drift 2017. LTCTEM - sensition CNA RM MOLDACC, constituer in: LL-468 drift 2017. CTC 2017. CTC 2017. LTCTEM drift 1.705-0012 driftened ed LTCTTED/ON CTC Serves Candid "Common, mercedura de Toutenies et Alford aurempictules Conditi (Common, et EL-PL-12076-611-017, constituer Alford aurempictules Conditi (Collective) CTC 2017. CTC 2017. CTC (LTT: CL-24412) FSC 3. LS10090600 drift dia 2016, allocate de SGS Vinter Kingdom LLA. Unced Frequence Declaration LLA. Unced Frequence 2. Declaration de contamination a provide/Accuta dia 1.1 septembra 2013. Reporting CTC 2. Reporting CTC 2017. CTC 2. Reporting CTC 2017. CTC 2. Reporting CTC 2017. CTC 2. Reporting CTC 2017. CTC 3. Rep
	renconterpiate privaterrasis Echicapert L'enflormante funditaria la tada de frecesses 2405-24250Hz Schmar & Conflormante Strind (1) Conflormation (1) Confl
	Construction to the construction of the total of the second

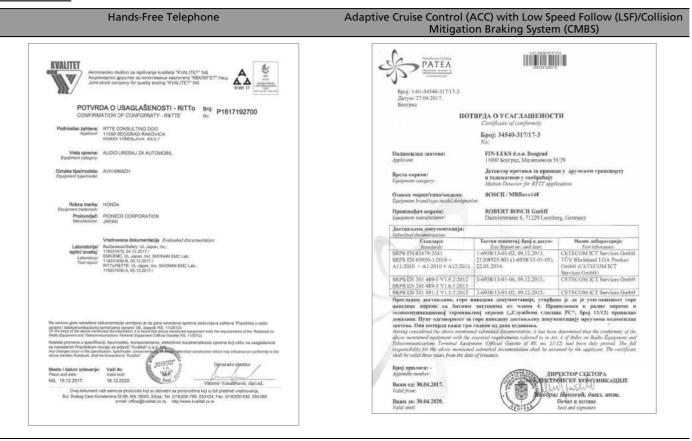
Information

Hands-Free Telephone

Serbian models

Keyless Access System

Axilia	nansko društvo za isplivanje kvalitela "KVLITET" Niš okojoco Japurulo sa ucrutinsaje sacamotra "K&AI/ITET" Hinu stock company for quality testing "KVALITET" Niš	Akdonarsko druđivo za isplivanje kvaliteta "KVALITET" Ni Augunagoto: ggyuteo sa korsmiseve asamirtera "KBARI/TET" Ni John-ulock company for quality idening "KVALITET" Ni Hosto sa
POTVR	DA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTO Broj: P1614053800	POTVRDA O USAGLAŠENOSTI - RITTo Brij: P1615096100 CONFIRMATION OF CONFORMITY - RETTE MD P1615096100
Podnosilac zahteva: Applicant:	RTTE CONSULTING DOO 11000 BEOGRAD MARICKA 2829	Podnosila zahlwar Tott CONSULTAND TO AND TE NATE NO Podnosila zahlwar 11000 BECGRAD Applemit 11000 BECGRAD MARICKA 2020
Vrsta opreme: Equipment category:	KLJUČ ZA DALJINSKI PRISTUP VOZILU	Vista opremi: AUDIO UREDAJ ZA AUTOMOBIL Equipment category:
Oznaka tipa/modela: Equipment type/model:	V2x/V4x	Oznaka tipahmodela: NR-000 Equament operimodec
Robna marka: Equipment trademark:	Continental	
Proizvodjač: Manufacturer:	Continental Automotive GmbH Germany	Robna marka: MITSUBISHI Equipment federmach Proizvoglad: Mitsubishi Slechtc Corporation Sanda Works Manufacturu: JAPAN
Laboratorija/ ispltni izvešaj: Laboratory/ Test report:	Verdinovana dokumentacija Evaluated documentation: Bashdesu:Galety M.Doda Hochfrequenz-Technik.: 1000046, 02:1021/2 EMICENC: M.Dudde Hochfrequenz-Technik.: 1200044, 02:1021/2 AITTORATTE: M.Dudde Hochfrequenz-Technik.: 12000443, 02:1021/2	Vednovana dokumentacija Evoluated documentatur; lapbristerija/ lapbristerija/ Laboristerija/ Laboristerija/ Laboristerija/ Terrimo/ Terrimo/ Terrimo/ Terrimo/ 1070809444, 24,08,2015 / 107089444,24,04,2015 /
opremi i telekomunikacionoj on the basia dhe above meno Radio Equipment and Telecome Nastale promene u specifika sa navedenim Pravilnikom Any changes occur si the speci adove mention Rudebock, shal Mesto i datum izdavanja: Place and date: Niš, 16.05.2014.	KBITTET E /Generalni dijektor	Na senowi gore nevedene dokumentacje ubirtijeno je da gore navedena sprama zadovoljava zahteve Pravlinika o nat oprami likalovamjakorinej leminicinijo oprami (Si, glasnik KS, 11/20/2), Nada Brigovani kad Takazovanication Termani Brigovani (Orbal Orealis KS, 11/20/2), Nadalje proteka u sportikaciji, byuhrdosi, kongoveni otna, ekklinicim konklenistikama oprame koji utiču na usaglaš sa navedanom Pravlinikom morgi sa prijadi "Vangoveni (Orbal Orealis, KJ, 11/20/2), Arabi Brigovano ato i na pravljani se prijadi "Vangoveni (Orbal Orealis, KJ, 11/20/2), Nadalje proteka u sportikaciji, byuhrdosi, kongoveni otna, ekklinicim konklenistikama oprame koji utiču na usaglaš sa navedanom Pravljanikom morgi sa prijadi "Vangoveni otna, ekklinicim konklenistikama oprame koji utiču na usaglaš na dobi se birovateli na konkleni in trakla pravljani se prijadi "Vangoveni ja prijadi "Vangoveni ja prijadi" Vangoveni otna do konveni in trakla prijadi u sa prijadi



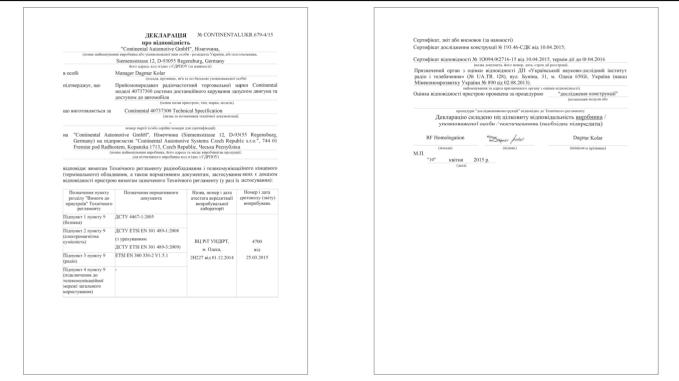
Blind spot information syste	m*/Cross Traffic Monitor*
И011 13	
This product in accordance with Serbia technical regulation	ідокі 1-63-34540-1705/23-3 Датуан IR 10-2013, Беатрах ПОТВРДА О У САГЛАШ ЕНСКТТИ Санійська оf comformity Бројі 3d540-1705/13-3 No: Починочкая налісия: RTTE Consulting d.o.a Beograd
	Apple.com 1500/Best pag, Maysense 28039 Berten angever: Propagi tegen som innærn Populærni canspary: 21 GER haverorbande Assar Commen magnet innalisenspara. At alle 2624754
	Energine and Analytic Analytic Astronomy Analytics (1997) International Symposium Analytics (1997) Energine and Astronomy Analytics (1997) South Factor (
	Description Description Description State 115, 1992 0120 Testime interaction, days and particle of the second state
	The second

Emergency Call (eCall) Овиме, DENSO CORPORATION изјављује да је радио опрема тип усаглашена са Директивом 2014/53/EU. Цео текст ЕУ декларације о усаглашености доступам је на следећој интернет адреси: Enoi: 1-01-34540-1292/17-3 https://www.denso.com/global/en/contact-us/doc/ Латум: 17.01.2018. Београд потврда о усаглашености Certificate of conformity Број: 34540-1292/17-3 SINIŠA ŠKRBIĆ PR, INŽENJERSKE DELATNOSTI Полносилан захтева: I TEHNIČKO SAVETOVANJE IN TECH, BORČA Applicant: 11211 Борча, Београд. Пут за Овчу 44 GSM 900/DCS1800/ UMTS 900/2100/GPS ypehaj 1a Врста опреме: Equipment category: упућивање хитних позива у юзилу GSM 900/DCS1800/ UMTS 900/2140/GPS Unit Assy Ecall DENSO / OGEV02 Ознажа марис/типа/модела: Equipment brand/type/model designation: Произвођач опреме: Denso Corporation Equipment manufacturer: 1-1 Showa-cho, Kariya-shi, Aichi-ken, 448-8661 Japan Достављена документација: Submitted documentation: Тестия взвештај, број в латум: Назив лабораторије: Станларл: Test Report no. and date: Test laboratory. Standards: SRPS EN 62311:2009 RF exposure calculation of Denso Corporation OGEY02 13 12 2017 SRPS EN 60950-1:2010 + A11:2010 11926140H-A, 07.11.2017. UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab. + A1:2010 + A12:2011 + A2:2014 SRPS EN 301 489-1 V2.1.1:2017 11926139H-C, 29.11.2017. UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab. Draft EN 301 489+19 V2.1.0 (2017-03) Draft EN 301 489-52 V1.1.0 (2016-11) SRPS EN 301 511 V9.0.2-2012 ODE MJP KYOCE 1702 02, 7 layers GmbH 13.06.2017. RE170502C14A, 09.06.2017. SRPS EN 301 908-1 V11.1.1:20.7 Bureau Veritas Consumer Product Services (H.K.) Ltd., Taoyuan Branch ODE MJP_KYOCE_1702_03, 7 layers GmbH SRPS EN 301 908-2 V11.1.1:20.7 16.06.2017. 11926139H-B, 10.11.2017. UL Japan, Inc. Ise EMC Lab. EN 303 413 VI.1.1 (2017-06) Parmersking, J. 11103 Betrypat, Diff. 108,306, Perglinase Office Viserael uprogramping scipace, 011 32,82,673

Emergency Call (eCall)



Keyless Access System



Додаток №1 до								
омер сертифікату	Jara		Продукція	Відомості у серпяфікаті про серійність	BIL año BJI	Протокса(в) випробувань		
10094.002716-15	10.04.2015	09.04.2016	Прийомопередавач радіочастотний торговельної марки Сонйлевіаї меделі 40737300 святеми дистанційного керумання запуском дингуна та деступом до автомобіхи	Продукція, що випускається серійно та явозитася в Україну з 10.04.2015 до 09.04.2016		4700 від 25.03.2015		
lianpисмство — n Continental Automs	пробник: tive Systems Cz	sech Republic s.r.o.",	744 01 Frenstat ped Radhostem, Kojansk	1713, Czech Republic, Чес	зака Республіка			
Manag (necas		(niama	0 Daymar (initiate ta					
1.П. "10" 1	авітня 20	015 p.						
-10- 1	(1817H51 20 (1878)	115 p.						

Keyless Access System

	ДЕКЛАРАІ про відповід	LUN	FAL.UKR.679-3/14
	про відповід "Continental Automotive (
(повне найме	вувания виробника або утовноваженої низ		постачальника,
	Siemensstrasse 12, D-93055	Regensburg, Germany	
	його адреса, код згідно з СД	РПОУ (за наявності)	
в особі	Manager Dagmar Kəlar		
	(посала, пртинице, им Радіопристрій (імобілайзер) мо	'я та по-батькові уповноваженої	ocoost)
підтверджує, що		делей V2X та V4X пристрою, тип, марка, модель)	
що виготовляється		а позвачения технічної документ	util.
	-		
	помер партії за/або серійні поя	мери для ідентифікації)	
Frenstat pod R	adhostem, Kopanska 1713, Czech		
(термінального) об відповідності прис	(появе найменувания вкробника, вого о для віччивного виробни м Технічного регламенту радіою бладнання, а також нормативни трою вимогам зазначеного Техн Полначення пормативного документа	ва кол згідво з ЄДРПОУ) обладнання і телекомуні м документам, застосува цічного регламенту (у раз	кщійного кінцевого ання яких є доказом іі іх застосування):
(термінального) об відповідності прис Позначення пункту розділу "Вимоги до пристроїв" Технічного	для вічшанного виробни м Технічного регламенту радіо ладнання, а також нормативни трою вимогам зазначеного Техн Полначения пормативного документа	ва кол згідво з ЄДРПОУ) обладнання і телекомуні м документам, застосува цічного регламенту (у раз	кщійного кінцевого ання яких є доказом ці х застосування): Номер і дата протоколу
(термінального) об відповідності прис Позначення пункту розділу "Вимоги до прястроїв" Технічного регламенту	для вітчиниюто впробия м Технічного регламенту радіо бладняния, а також нормативни трою вимогам зазниченого Техн Позначения пормативного документа	ва кол жідно з СДРПОУ) обладнання і телекомуні м документам, застосув цічного регламенту (у раз Назва, номер і дата атестата акредитації випробувальної	кщійного кінцевого ання яких є доказом ці х застосування): Номер і дата протоколу
(термінального) об відповідності прис Позначення пункту розділу "Вимоги до прястроїв" Технічного регламенту Підпункт 1 пункту 9 (безнека)	аза вітиненного вкробен м Технічного регламенту радіо також нормативни трою вимогам зазниченого Техн Пошачення пормативного документа ДСТУ 4467-1:2005	ва кол жідно з СДРПОУ) обладнання і телекомуні м документам, застосув цічного регламенту (у раз Назва, номер і дата атестата акредитації випробувальної	кщійного кінцевого ання яких є доказом ці х застосування): Номер і дата протоколу
(термінального) об відповідності прис Позначення пункту роділу "Вимогн до пристроїв" Технічного регламенту Підпункт 1 пункту 9 (безивка) Підпункт 2 пункту 9	для вітчиниюто впробия м Технічного регламенту радіо бладняния, а також нормативни трою вимогам зазниченого Техн Позначения пормативного документа	ва кол жідно з СДРПОУ) обладнання і телекомуні м документам, застосув цічного регламенту (у раз Назва, номер і дата атестата акредитації випробувальної	кщійного кінцевого ання яких є доказом ці х застосування): Номер і дата протоколу
(термінального) об відповідності прис Позначення пункту розділу "Вимоги до прястроїв" Технічного регламенту Підпункт 1 пункту 9 (безнека)	аза вітиненного вкробен м Технічного регламенту радіо також нормативни трою вимогам зазниченого Техн Пошачення пормативного документа ДСТУ 4467-1:2005	ва кол жідно з СДРПОУ) обладнання і телекомуні м документам, застосув цічного регламенту (у раз Назва, номер і дата атестата акредитації випробувальної	кщійного кінцевого ання яких є доказом ці х застосування): Номер і дата протоколу
(термінального) об відповідності прис Позначення пункту роділу "Вямоги до пристроїв" Технічного регламенти Піднункт 1 пункту 9 (безпека) Піднункт 2 пункту 9 сезектромалітіта	для віччинного рагламенту радіо заданния, а пакок норматними троно вимогам зазниченого Техн Пошичения порматникого документа ДСТУ 4467-1:2005 ДСТУ 4167-1:2005	на вод чідво з СДРЛОУ) Обладнання і телекомуні цічного регламенту (у раз Інама, помер і дата агестра дарештації вапребувальної забераторії ВІЦРГГ УНДІРГ,	кціїного кінцевого ння яких є доказом і х застосування): Номер і для протоколу (звіту) випробувань
(термінального) об відповідності прис Помначення пункту роція: УВимон до пристроїв' Технічного регламенти Підиункт 1 пункту 9 (безпека) Підиункт 2 пункту 9 селектромантітна сумісність)	ала віченнико виробни м Технічного регламенту радіо Заданния, а такок норматники троїо вимогам зазначеного Техн Позначення пормативного документа ДСТУ 4467-1:2005 ДСТУ 4467-1:2005 ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-1:2008 о уракуванняя	ва вод чтаво в СДРНОУ) обладнания і телекомуні м документам, застосуви инисно регламенту (у ра: инисно регламенту (у ра: набораторії лабораторії	кціїного кінцевого ння яких є доказом і х застосування): Номер і для протоколу (звіту) випробувань
(термінального) об відповідності прис Позначення пункту роділу "Вимоти до регламенту Підпункт 1 пункту 9 (безнека) Підпункт 2 пункту 9 (слектроматнітна сумісність)	али вітемнікого прегламенту радіо мадлання, а також пормативни продолжить параго продативного документа Поличення пормативного документа дсту 4467-1:2005 Дсту ETSI EN 301 489-1:2008 (у узяхувники Дсту ETSI EN 301 489-3:2009)	ва водативно з СДРПОУ) обладнания і телекомуні ичного регламенту (у раз и Нама, поморчі дата телера аверштний випаробувальної лабораторії ВІЦ Ріт УНДИРТ, м. Одеса,	кціїного кінцевого ння яких є доказом і х застосування): Номер і для протоколу (звіту) випробувань
(термінального) об відповідності прис рогаізу "Вимоги до проветроді "Технічного регламенту Пілиункт 1 пулкту 9 Підпункт 2 пулкту 9 (сбелиса) цезектроматітна еземісність)	али вітчиниюся ондебия м Технічного регламенту радіо Заданник, а такок норматники троно викогам зазниченого Техн Топичения порматникого документа дсту 4467-1.2005 ДСТУ ЕТSI EN 301 489-1.2008 о узнаузанники ДСТУ ЕТSI EN 301 489-3.2009) ДСТУ ЕТSI EN 301 489-3.2009)	ва водативно з СДРПОУ) обладнания і телекомуні ичного регламенту (у раз и Нама, поморчі дата телера аверштний випаробувальної лабораторії ВІЦ Ріт УНДИРТ, м. Одеса,	кціїного кінцевого ння яких є доказом і х застосування): Номер і для протоколу (звіту) випробувань
(терминального) об відповідності прис Помачення пункту роділу "Вимента до прастрой" Технічног нетаванти нетаванти Підпункт 2 пункту 9 (свектроантігна усисніства) Підпункт 2 пункту 9 (свектроантігна усисніства) Підпункт 3 пункту 9 (радіо)	али вітчиниюся ондебия м Технічного регламенту радіо Заданник, а такок норматники троно викогам зазниченого Техн Топичения порматникого документа дсту 4467-1.2005 ДСТУ ЕТSI EN 301 489-1.2008 о узнаузанники ДСТУ ЕТSI EN 301 489-3.2009) ДСТУ ЕТSI EN 301 489-3.2009)	ва водативно з СДРПОУ) обладнания і телекомуні ичного регламенту (у раз и Нама, поморчі дата телера аверштний випаробувальної лабораторії ВІЦ Ріт УНДИРТ, м. Одеса,	кціїного кінцевого ння яких є доказом і х застосування): Номер і для протоколу (звіту) випробувань
(термінадльного) об відповідності прис роділу "Вимота до прострой" Технічного регламити Підпункт 1 пункту 9 (севенсая) Підпункт 2 пункту 9 (севетроманнітна сумісність) Підпункт 3 пункту 9 (даліо)	али вітчиниюся ондебия м Технічного регламенту радіо Заданник, а такок норматники троно викогам зазниченого Техн Топичения порматникого документа дсту 4467-1.2005 ДСТУ ЕТSI EN 301 489-1.2008 о узнаузанники ДСТУ ЕТSI EN 301 489-3.2009) ДСТУ ЕТSI EN 301 489-3.2009)	ва водативно з СДРПОУ) обладнания і телекомуні ичного регламенту (у раз и Нама, поморчі дата телера аверштний випаробувальної лабораторії ВІЦ Ріт УНДИРТ, м. Одеса,	кціїного кінцевого ння яких є доказом і х застосування): Номер і для протоколу (звіту) випробувань

Keyless Access System

Сертифікат дослідження конструкції № 193.37-СДК від 13.05.2014;	<u>Додаток №1 до д</u>	цекларації (д	одаткова ін	формація щ	одо оцінки відпові	дност про
Сертифікат відповідності № 10094.001961-14 від 13.05.2014, термін дії до 12.05.2015	Номер сертифікату		Дата припинення дії	Продукція	Відомості у сертифікаті про серійність	ВЦабо ВЛ
(ваява закумента моне навита, ала серяя претерний: Призначений орган о ощіння каполацькогті Дін «Українськами науково-дослідний інститут радіо і техебоченняю (№ 10.4.TR. 028), куд. Буніна, 31. м. Одеса 65026, Україна (наказ Міневсковоролиту України № 80 на (д.02.80216).	10094.001961-14	сертифікату 13.05.2014	сертифікату 12.05.20 5	Радіопристрій (імобілайзер) моделей V2x та V4x	В Продукція, що випускається серійно та ввозиться в Україну з 13.05.2014 до	ВЦ?іТ УНЛРТ, м. Одеса
навменування та адреса призначеного органуз оціяки відковідності) Оцінка відповідності пристрою проведена за процедурою "дослідження конструкції"					12.05.20155	
(позначення модуля або	Підприємство — ви	робник:				
проведув "аксіяловия новезувоїї відновідов а Теміново рагавонату) Декларації о складено під цільковиту відговіддальність <u>виробликка</u> / уповноваженої особи / постачальника нісобідник підкреслити)	"Continental Automo Kopanska 1713, Czec	tive Systems C:			enstat pod Radhostem,	
Dagmar fila	Manage	r			Da	igmar Kola
Manager Dagmar Kolar	(посада)		(11	ідпис)	(inin	али та прізвин
(посада) (підпяс) (івініаля та прізвище)	М.П.					
М.П. "13" травия 2014 р.	"13" тр	авня 20	14 p.			
		(дата)				
(1313)						

в особі	директор Ш	код СДРПОУ 374 читан наба ремагно Украна.		надан «ЕДРСКУУ (на навион(ті)
		Processi untrassent, be'h ini un fismanne	HERMAN AND	
иілтығражус, шо	NR-000 (UN		анния разболетуну (в то арабмачем у эхидиома	му числі з інтерфейсом
що выготовляється	38. Texui	Отнов встан практрак, тек, н Чихано стекцифікаціє ю вогра	storanca	
на	1513, Japan (Siam Eastern Thniland / Ta	Destric Corporation Sanda /Roonin) na nimpuesseen 9 Industrial Park, 60/16 Me	i «Mitsuhishi flectric Th to 3 T.Mahyangtorn, A.Phi	Sanda-City, Hyogo 669- al Auto-parts Co.,Ltd., alodaeng-21140-Rayong-
нідповідає вн (термінально	могам Технічі го) обладнанн	ного регламенту раліообл щ а також нормативним л могам зазначеного Техні	адиалын і телекомунікаці документам, застосуванн	ійного кінцевого я яких с доказом
Позначения пун розділу "Вимоги пристроїв" Техніч регламенту	до	нечения порматионого документа	Назва, номер і дата атестата акредитації вінтробуральної лабораторії	Номер і дата протоколу (звіту) випробувань
Dianyour 1 nytorry 9 (Semesa)		4467-1-2005. EX-50385:2007]	HIT 101 101 'Owera'' (arecrar asptimized NG2H129 nig18.05.14)	3615780 via 03-04-2015
Палунет 2 пунету 9 (плетромагнітна суміс	DCTY I	ETSLEN 301 45941:2000, ETSLEN 301 45941:2000, ETSLEN 301 45941:2000,	BH 201 HL 'Osera" (arecrut algebraad) Ne28(3)# ele18.05.14)	Net5/80 att 93.04 2015
flianymer 3 nymery.9 (piało)	DCLA.	F151 EN 300 328 2008 7115 2009 N 300 640-2 V Lit J.	HELTIS BLU "Owners" (arecesser auguturmus) No2EE329 and 10.05-14)	3615/80 sig (0.114 2011
Палічнят 4 пункту 9 (палічечення до талекомунікаційная ме загального користупан				30
Серняфікат, звіт аб (залижнюсті)		Theorem of the FULLAN COLLES.	6076-15 під 20 112015 поцано за Кіліц, кул. Алтонова, 5, о А.Т.В. 105, за каздром Мінеков отгадав НААУ м.10283 па влентноми и служа приходни	фис 714, ник. 418 044 906 комразнитку від 16.03 2013
Ошниа відповідно преведена за проце	сті пристрою	"доелідження констру	ante produces condition, eras	
(neuronanananananananananananananananananana		пу підповідальність вирс	эбаплал / <u>уповлеваженот о</u>	count / nocravactutoma
ELucopation	3			THE R DE LOCAL
Restored and	- True	20 meterina 2011 # Column	ЕКСПЕРТИЗ СОВ «ОМЕГА» Запис в ресстр	У ПРОЗЕДЕНО У ПРОЗЕДЕНО ТОП «Щ «ОМЕТА» на 22. 12. 20 Др. 276-15

Пазна характеристики	Значения аб	о позначения
	стандарти IEEE 802.11a/b/g/n	CTBRUBPT IEEE 802.15.1
Служба радіони язку	ØIKCOBAHA	Малопотужиї застосування
Радіотехнологія	Ширскоемуговий радіодоступ	Широкосмуговий радодоступ
Смута радіочастот	2400_2483,5 MT u 5150_5250 MT u 5250_3350 MT u 5470_5670 MT u 5725_\$850 MT u	24002483,5 MTm
Стося (центральних) частот	5 MDa	1 MFu
Тан модуляці/клає випромінювання	22M0G1W 22M0D1W 40M0G1W 40M0D1W	IMDOFNW, IMODGNW
Метод раціодоступу	CSMA-CA SSMA/TDD	CSMA-CA/TDD
Екпвалентна ізотропна аппромінювана потужність, не боьще	20 дВм (100 мВт)	2,5 mBr
Тип антени/ коефіціент підсилення	berecpoвана / до ń дБі	Титегрована / до 6 дБі
Zapiter Zapiter Lastration Lastra	Gammona 2019 p.	Effecteries O.B.
	FACUALAT UNO	

AC MARK	H	
1	OPF	109 AH 3 ОЦІНКИ ВІДПОВІДНОСТІ «ОМЕГА» CONFORMITY ASSESSMENT BODY «OMEGA»
	СЕРТИФ	
	N# 0043	Cepin C
	Заресстровано в ресстрі ООВ за № Леринескі пе Лесан и ОКО акон Ли	UA.TR.169.0076-15
	Термін дії з	20 листопада 2015 р.
	Сертифікат видано Сетбит іг інней эк	«Mitsubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works», (2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-City, Hyogo 669-1513, Japan /Rinokis)
	Продукція Protecte	Комплекси автомобільні мультимедійні торговельної карги «Мізційні» кодикті NR-000 (UNIT ASSY, AUDIO) з ^{Тон ходо} обладизанеми радіодоступу (к тому часлі з інтерфейсов передані даних. Вічеторбі та GPS прийжанем з техні-нями характористичними в (дио 3 дідатком
	Відповідає внимогам Сописний би посления	 Теклічного регламенту радсобладнини і телекомунікаційног кінцевого (проціяльніки) об'яділінти. Уваглализник умев авгоріднікті Р.(24-1.3, Р.(24-1.2, Р.(24-1.3, Р.(24-1.3))) Р. (24-2, Р. 19-24-2, Р. 19-24-2), Р. (24-3-4) К. (24-24), Р. (24-24), Р. (24-24), (2
	Виробник	«Misubishi Electric Corporation Sanda Works», (2-3-33, Miwa, Sanda-City, Hyogo 669-1513, Japan /Rineels)
	Місце виробництва Place of productor	eMitsubishi Electric Thai Auto-parts Co.,Ltd.», (Siam Eastern Industrial Park, 60/16 Moo 3 T. Mabyangpom, A.Pluakdaong 21140-Rayong-Thailand / Taiknawg)
	Орган з оцінки віповідності силіству ваначата боду	«ОМЕГА», ТОВ «ВЦ «ОМЕГА» № ЦА.ТЯ 109, за наказом Мнексономрозентку від 16.03.2015 № 267 Агестат про акредитацію НААУ № 10283 03166, м. Киїн. вул. Англосая, 5, офіс 714, тел.: +38.044.584.5083
	Підстана Ли роста	Висновок ООВ № 0076-15 від 20.11.2015 р. щодо відповідності продукції вимогам Технічного регламенту
	Додаткова інформація	Оцина відповідності проведена за процадурою дослідження конструиції (п. 26 Технічного регламенту)
	Керівник органу з оцінки і Neci d'he controly азавлянийся	

		oruth		АТОК 1ідження кон	CTOV/UII
	до се			OF DESING CERTIFICAT	
	Nn 0043				Серія ДД
	До сертифікату № U.	A.TR.109	.0076-15		
[то селбана ли Застосовані вим Армито монятично	оги	Нормати	вні документи Им дохемен	Номер і дата протоколу випробувань (звіту про випробування Лация перена)
	Палунит 1 пункту 9 Техо регламенту радкобладу телекомунікаційного кінк (термікалічного) обладу - захист адоров'я і забез безпенкі споживанів	(R)(9:00 010000	ДСТУ 4467-1:2005, ДСТУ ЕN 50385-2007		Протоколя акпробувань. Митакао від 03.04.2015 ВЦ ДЛТ «ВЦ «Омета» (апестал акрадитації Мі2Н33) від 18.05.14)
	Падчикт 2 пункту 9 Техо регламенту радообладо телекомунікеційного кін (поркнального) обладні - забозпочення алоктромальтикі суміон	й кннар 01063ц анена	DCTY ETSI 8	EN 301 489-1:2006, EN 301 489-3:2009, EN 301 489-17:2008	Протоколя випробужань Ne15/80 pip, 03.04.2015 ВЦ.ДП «ВЦ «Омета» (втестат вкрелятації №2H33 від 18.05.14)
	Пдружет 3 пункту 9 Тах регламенту радооблад телекомункац йного из (теренального) облади арактивно расоблади раскчастотного ресурс	01014/1 010490 010490 814118	ДСТУ ЕТSI EN 3 Узагальнен умо раза. 1. 2, раза. 4 Рі 24-2-3, Рі 24	EN 300 328:2008; '7115:2009; 00 440-2 V1.4.1, av P124-1-1, P124-1-2; -4, P124-3, P124-3, P124-3, 2-3, 2-4, P124-3 (oxeanerii aug 12.01.2012 Nr18)	Rporokovit Bilingo5y88Hi No15/80 silip 03.04.2015 BLL/DT #BLL «Ovierra» (erectar algeourrau) Nv2H33 silip 18.05.14)
	Підпункт 4 пункту 9 (підключення до телекомунікаційної моро загального користуванн		, and spen (the s		
	Склад обладнання: выдемы рать от Бухринн	модел	NR-000 (UNIT A		повельної марки «Mitsubish нанням радіодоступу (в ток а) та GPS приймачам
Î	THE REAL PROPERTY.	00	новні технічні х	арактеристики моде	init
	Найменува	ння пара	метру	Опис параметру	, значения або позначення
ļ	Служба ралісав'		ні характеристика	п режимі IEEE 802.11 Фіксорана	albigin
ł	Радютехнологія	CION .	1978 Sec. 852	Широкосмугов	ий радюдоступ
1	Смуга радіонаст			2400-2483.5;	
				5150 - 5250; 5250 - 5350;	
				5470 - 5670,	
	Сітка (централы	air) sarts	m. Mfac	5725 - 5850	
			in a subsection of the subsection of the		NOD TW, 40M0G1W, 40M0D1W
	Класи запромію		передавача, мВт:	100	
	Максимальна по			Тетегрована / д	
Contraction of the		Б	панічні дарактерист	MID! IN DEXXMAN IEEE 802.15	
	Макримальна по Тип антени/Ga, ; Спужба радков	абі ў язку:	езнічні характерист	ныя в режний IEEE 802.15 Малопотужні з	
	Максимальна по Тип антени/Са. ; Служба радюзе Радютехнологія	цБі У ваку:	ахнічні характерист	Малопотужні з Широкосмугов	
	Максимальна по Тип антенни ба, ј Служба радіозе Радіотехнологія Смута радіочаст	цБі язку: от, МГш:		Малопотужні з	
	Максимальна по Тип антеннуба, ; Служба расісов Радіотехнологіл Ситиа (централь Епесь ангроман Епесь ангроман	uÉl Raxy: or, MEu: sxx) часто салище		Малопотужні з Широкосмугов	ий радюдсктуп
	Максимальна по Тип антеннуба, Опужба расісов Родіотохнологія Смукта расісов Стала сантралы Класка централы Класка централы Б'ябл, не больза	цбі язку: от, МГц: які) части околице , мВт:		Малопотужні з Широкосмугов 2400-2483,5 Марляход тма	HI paglopostyn
	Максимальна по Тип антеннуба, ; Служба расісов Радіотехнологіл Ситиа (централь Епесь ангроман Епесь ангроман	цбі язку: от, МГц: які) части околице , мВт:	n, MILL	Малопотужні з Широкосмугов 2400-2483,5	HI paglopostyn



		СЕРТИФІКАТ № 2089.2-СДІ ДОСЛІДЖЕННЯ КОНСТРУКІ	51 m			
Серт	нфікат но	ТОВ "Радіо Тест Стандарт", Україна 63115, м.Київ, пул. Лавінська, 22-а, ки 135	Кал СДРПОУ	99265151		
Itpo	i) wata in	Комплеке интомобільний мультимедійний торговельної ми AVH-6968ZH з облазиванням разіолостуру (інтерфейс перед	рки HONDA s 1911 даних Blue	saeai tooth)		
Binpaöinu: "Pinneer Corportion", Sinasia (Kawagoe Plant, 25-1 Yamada, Kawagoe shi, Saitama- kan 356-8555, Japan) an interpretenti sciumo 3 Joanrason 26.1 Onarasona 7010 "Pinne Teer Cramonic", Yavadha, at a Builenettico "Panner Carnoration".						
Rosarteena Indopenauia Rooula, ala 08.09.2017						
	тьтат	и експертизи представлених документів.		1000 A		
N	<u></u>	Сферя онівкя	Pesya	ьтат		
1	pagiool	кція належить до сферм дії технічного регламенту бладнання і телекомунікаційного кіпцевого (термінального) ання (дялі - ТР)	🖾 Так	ПНІ		
2		тиані документи для доведення відповідпості продукай ім ТР правильно шлидчені та застоговані	🖾 Так	D HI		
3	націон можут Техніч	рнативні дикументи, що застосовані, с у "Переліку пльних стандартів вий в разі добровільного застосування с отрийнятися вкі коказ піцповільності пріскущії измогазь ного регіламенту раліообладияция і телекомунісаційного пес (теренікальног) обяданавання".	🗆 Так	ID HI		
.4	Зніст (райлу технічної документації відповідає вимогам ТР	🖾 Tas	10 Hi		
.5	Проте	коли випробувань підтверджують відоовідність продукції ам ТР	2 Tax	OHI		
Техн ибла ресуу П укли В бер розд пвоо я таке лабе проз цамо зоку С	филого опалня ку Укра рано за дання / аробна гічта в п після лу кон коло за ту кон коло за ту кон коло за та за коло за та за та та за та та та за та та та за та та та та та та та та та та та та та	патала сослартки и спинологие, но электоруний Пре- реллиемир райоволючникий технологичнованого у на ракляления роковая застногранти у серен енгора Какарантов училов ООВ та новоме НКРН дой 12.01.70 сточутования померу ООВ разом и визовляет ка бо уковонованена ими особа — регламт Украйне у комплет технізова ООВ та новорнов пільтералується, к або уковонованена ими особа — регламт Украйне у помляет технізова документаці, кака надавлялся на аптотосленна стопильного зразов продукції і нов- зиманет технізова помуснита на документа да пробенка не с регламетоту сертийи та падууний у но разван раземосто виглях, за на запятов, необхідни у току числі коліков дакларный про відполідного тахні параво разменту сторийна у самінов на саконов пільтардження відполідонсті технічним регла саконов пільтардження відполідонсті таклічним регла саконов на бума заблява у самінов запатовали саконов пільтардження відполідонсті таклічним регла парамора на размента сторитова у самінов за саконов дахова-доклідний петатара подати размення було від 2010 годова у самінов саконов на размента на сторитова у саконов саконов наконов за размента сократова у самінов за саконов дахова-доклідний петатара подати размення саконования на саконов саконов за размення размента за саконов саконова за саконова саконов саконова на саконова саконова саконова на саконова саконова саконова саконова на саконова саконова на саконова саконова на саконова саконова на саконова саконова на саконова саконова саконова саконова на саконова саконова на саконова саконова саконова саконова саконова на саконова саконова саконов	инистою (пир стания рады 12 мл.я. еf допускаета и постачаль, есспертизу, и и його для и його для и його для по пифарман а, икано не сегі талабо чентам. обіпкості А телебачения	зийнального) чистионтиксо си за умовн ик понянен протитом 10 серенйрки на представляю сна стоеново обоба жаляю сна стоеново технічною UA.TR.028		

Hands-Free Telephone System

Додаток № 1 до Сертифіката № 2089.2-СДК

Номер сертифікату	Чанний від	Продукція	Відомості про серійність	ВЦ або ВЛ	Протокол(и) випробувань	Перелік НД
0094.005837-18	09.03.2018	Комплекс ватомобільний мультанасційний торговельной марки НОЮА моделі АVII-60882Н з обладиванная радіодоступу (інтерфейс передачі даник Bluetooth)	Продукція, що випускається серійню з 09.03.2018	ВЦ РІТ УНДІРТ, м. Одеса	6885 від 14.12.2017	ДСТУ EN 60950-1:2015, ДСТУ EN 50385:2007, ДСТУ ETS EN 300 328:2008, ДСТУ ETS EN 300 328:2008, ДСТУ ETS 101 489-1:2014 (3 урахуваняям ДСТУ ETSI EN 301 489-17:2008)
ідприсметво(-a)- Pioneer Manufactu аїланд	виробник(-и): aring (Thailand)	Co., Ltd.*, Rojana Industrial Park, 1/31 M	loo 5, Tambol Kanha	m, Amphur U	-Thai, Pranako	msriayutthaya 13210, Thailand,
Керівник С	юв	Meer Start Market Shap				

.



Сертифікат дос	підження кон повідності №	к (ва наявності): струкції № 2089.2-СДК від 09.0 10094.005837-18 від 09.03.2013	8
і телебачення	рган з оціцки » (№ UA.T витку Україн		й туково-дослідний інститут радіо и. Эдеса 65026, Україна (наказ
Оцінка вілпові		ою проведена за пропелуроно	"лослілження конструкції" (позначення модуля або
	арацію скл	алайноно кээснугой" з'аньйно ат Т адено під цілковиту відпов <u>особи</u> / постачальника (не	ідальність виробника /
Дирея (поса		(Dime)	Д.В. Шуман (minister represente)
"(99"	(шта) 21	DIS P (France Percent) (France Percent) (Fran	

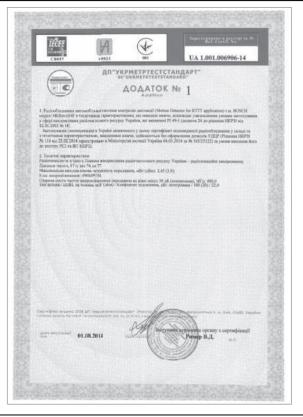
Hands-Free Telephone System

-

№ сертефікату	Second air	Dpopyiozia	Bizowneri npo cepillaice	n BIŞ ağo BJ	Претонов(н) непробувань
10094.009837-18	09.03.2018	Контакие автомобльный мулитимский мерах НОМДА модел АУП-0858211 : разколоступу (потерфейс парешич да	all representation of approximation art Illustrooth) Fipersystatic, use anarycener ceptifiere va monierisere a Vapathey a 09.03.2018	M. Copes	
llimpersectio	aspoferasi		o S, Tarebel Kanhan, Anghur U-Thai, Pontal		Thelined Telever
Property Managers	and (contact)	Ca., Luc., Repara andareni Para, 1711 880	C 2, Farrier Kannan, Angrie C-Tras, Press	annugannya taana	Thermon, 140,495
Даре	crop	Charles_	JI, B. III ymnas		
(000	unt)	(Nimet)	(iniciate re spineets)		
MIL		0.00			
199*	Gepenso (cam)	2018 p.			
	(cane)	(Strand and)			
		C.			
		Constant of the second			

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)/Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)





Blind spot information system*/Cross Traffic Monitor*



Israeli models

Keyless Access System	Hands-Free Telephone System	
אלחוטי הפעלה מרשיון ופטור "משני" בסיס על הינו במכשיר השימוש.א. .כדין הפועלות אחרות למערכות הפרעה וללא מהפרעות מוגן לא־כלומר אלחוטי הפעלה מרשיון פטור הציוד.בלבד הלקוח של עצמי לשימוש "בזק בפעולת" רק .ב התקשורת מיוחדממשרד רשיון מחייב 'ג לצד "בזק שרות" מתן אחר טכני שינוי כל בו לעשות ולא.המכשיר של המקורית האנטנה את להחליף אסור.ג	א. נקודות הגישת תהיה מיועדת אך ורק סחיבור משתמש המצוי בחצרים מתוחמים (דוגמת בית, בית עסק, מתחם שדה תעופה, קמפוס אוניברסיטאי וכוי ב. לצורך נשישה לאינטרנט, נקודות הגישה תקושר מחוץ לחצרים אך ורק אל בעל רושיון למתן שירות גישה לאינטרנט (12, להלן-ספק אינטרנט) הקישור לספק אינטרנט יהיה אדן ורק באמצעות קו תקשורת נתונים המסופק ביזי בעל רישיון למתן שירותי תקשורת אדן ורק באמצעות קו תקשורת נתונים המסופק ביזי בעל רישיון למתן שירותי תקשורת ג. קישור נקודת המשה מחוץ לחצרים לצורך תקשורת נתונים ייעשה באמצעות תשתיות של בעל רישיון מתאים. ד. לצורך שרות לצד גינדרש רישיון נוסף מאנף הנדסה ורישוי (משרד התקשורת).	
Blind spot information system*/Cross Traffic Monitor*	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow (LSF)/Collisio Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	
א. חשימוש במכשיר מטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי, לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדין. ב. רק "בפעולת בוק" לשימוש עצמי של הלקוח בלבד, הצידי פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי. מתן "שרות בוק" לצד ג' מחייב רשיון מיוחד ממשרד התקשורת. ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.	10. תפאים מיוחדים והערת הפשרז: Mid range Radar sensor for vehicles (MRR) לפני השיווק דיראג מדבואן שעל אריזה חיצונית של המוצר יודבק מדבקה, בח יהיה רשום מס האישור וכן: א השימוש במכשיר הזיו על בסוס ישמעית ושטור מרשיון השלוח אלחוטי. כלומר - לא מוגן מהפרעות וללא הפרעה למערכות אחרות הפועלות כדץ. ב. רק "עבשיל בגוקי לשימוש עצמו של הלקוח בלבד, הצירד פטור מרשיון הפעלה אלחוטי. מתן ישרות בזקי לשר מחיב רשוון מווית משרד התקשורת.	

ג. אסור להחליף את האנטנה המקורית של המכשיר, ולא לעשות בו כל שינוי טכני אחר.

EC Declaration of Conformity Content Outline*

 The undersigned, Mr. Ryo that the machinery descri- • The EC-directive 209 Description of the machine 	ery	Deutsch (German) EG-Konformitälserklärung 1. Der Unterzeichner, Herr Ryoichi Hiraki, Vertreter der Hersteller, erklärt hiermit, das die unten beschmingen von folgender relevanten Bestimmungen von folgender Richtlinie entsprechen: •EG-Richtlinie 2006/42/EC für Maschinen 2. Beschreibund der Maschine	Français (French) Déclaration de conformité CE 1. Le soussigné, M. Ryoichi Hiraki, représentant les fabricants, déclare par la présente que les machines décrites ci- dessous satisfont toutes les dispositions pertinentes de: -La Directive CE 2006/42/EC concernant les machines
SNB SJD S2A SAH TP6 T5A T2V	Ilifting motor vehicle 9. Type Honda Type.0 Honda Type.0 Honda Type.0 Honda Type.0 Honda Type.0 Honda Type.0 Honda Type.1 Honda Type.4 Honda Type.4 Honda Type.4 Honda Type.4 Honda Type.4	a) Allgemeine Bezeichnung : Scherenwagenheber b) Funktion : Anhebung des Kraftfahrzeugs c) Modell d) Typ 3. Hersteller (1) 4. Hersteller (2) 5. Juristische Person, die bevollmächtig ist, die technische Datei zu erstellen 6. Bezug auf Standardübereinstimmungen 7. Andere Standardübereinstimmungen 8. Ausgestellt in 9. Datum	2. Description des machines a) Dénomination générique : Cric partiographe b) Fonction : levage de véhicule à moteur c) Modèle d) Type 3. Fabricant (1) 4. Fabricant (2) 5. Personne morale habilitée à compiler le fichier technique 6. Références aux normes harmonisées 7. Autres normes ou spécifications 8. Fait à 9. Date
 Manufacturer (2): Honda CHANG2HOU RIKENSEI No. 5 Xinlin Road, Zhongi Jiangsu CHINA Legal person authorised /r Honda Motor Europe Ltdl p/a Honda Motor Europe Ltdl p/a Honda Motor Europe Ltdl p/a Honda Motor Europe I Wijngaardweid 1 (Noord Y B 3300 Aotot (Belgium) 	KÖ MACHINERY CO., LTD. pu Changzhou, o compile the technical file : Jedgian Branch Li – Aalst Office	Nederland (Dutch) EG-conformiteitsverklaring 1. De ondergetekende, dhr. Ryoichi Hiraki, die de fabrikanten vertegenwoordigt, verklaart hierbij dat de hieronder beschreven machine voldoet aan alle relevante voorzieningen van: •De EG-richtilijn 2006/42/EG voor machines 2. Beschriving van de machine	Dansk (Danish) EF-overensstemmelseserklæring 1. Undertegnede, hr. Ryolchi Hiraki, som repræsenterer producenterne, erklærer hermed, at de herunder beskrevne maskiner overholder alle de relevante bestemmelser i: -Maskindirektivet, EU-direktiv 2006/42/EF 2. Beskrivelse af maskinerne
G. References to harmonized EN1494.2000+A1.2008 Done at: Date:	- Sailatma, Japen 1 Decomber,2009 <u>Ryter chi I cfizaki</u> Rycichi Hiraki President of RIKENKAKI CO.,LTD.	2. beschinging van de machine a) Generieke benaming : Pantograafkrik b) Functie : Motorvoertuig opheffen c) Model d) Type 3. Fabrikant (1) 4. Fabrikant (2) 5. Rechtspersoon geautoriseerd voor de samenstelling van het technische dossier 6. Referentie geharmoniseerde normen 7. Andere normen of specificaties 8. Plaats 9. Datum	2. Desknivelse af intasknirerie 3. Generisk betegnelse : Saksedonkraft b) Funktion : Til at løfte motorkørtøj c) Model d) Type 3. Producent (1) 4. Producent (2) 5. Jundisk person med bemyndigelse til at udarbejde den tekniske fil 6. Henvisninger til harmoniserede standarder 7. Andre standarder eller specifikationer
	President of CHANGZHOU RIKENSEIKO MACHINERY CO.,LTD.		8. Sted 9. Dato

Italiano (Italian) Dichiarazione CE di Conformità 1. Il sottoscritto, Sig. Ryolchi Hiraki, trappresentante delle fabbriche, dichiara che il veicolo sotto riportato è conforme alle disposizioni partinenti alla: •Direttiva 2006/42/CE relative agli autoveicoli 2. Descrizione della vettura a) Denominazione generica : Martinetto a pantografo b) Funzione : sollevamento veicolo a motore c) Modello 4. Fabbrica (1) 4. Fabbrica (2) 5. Legale autorizzato a costituire il fascicolo teenico 6. Riferimento norme standard 7. Altre norme e specifiche 8. Eseguito a 9. Data	Ελληνικά (Greek) Δήλωση Συμμόρφωσης ΕΚ 1. Ο υπογεγραμμένος, κ. Ryoichi Hiraki, ως εκπράσωπος των κατασκευαστών, δηλώνει δια του παρόντος ότι το μηχάνημα που περιγράφεται παρακάτω πληροί όλες τις σχετικές διατάξεις της. «Κοινοικής Οδηγίας 2006/42/ΕΚ σχετικά με μηχανήματα 2. Περιγραφή του μηχανήματος α) Συνήθης ονομασία : Γρύλος αυτοκινήτου β) Λεπουργία : Ανύφωση μηχανοκίνητων οχημάτων γ) Μοντέλο δ) Τύπος 3. Κατασκευαστής (1) 4. Κατασκευαστής (2) 5. Νομικό πρόσωπο εξουσιοδοτημένο για τη σύνταξη του τεχικού φακέλου 6. Αναφορές στα εναρμονισμένα πρότυπα 7. Άλλα πρότυπα ή προδιαγραφές 8. Συντάχθηκε στη 9. Ημερομηνία	Suomi / Suomen kieli (Finnish) EY Vaatimustenmukaisuusvakuutus 1. Allekirjoittanut, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, valmistajan edustaja, vakuuttaa täten, että alla kuvattu laite täyttää kaikki seuraavissa säännöksissä annetut asianmukaiset velvoitteet: *Koneita koskeva EY-direktiivi 2006/42/EC 2. Laitteen kuvaus a) Yteisnimike : Saksinosturi b) Käyttötarkoitus : moottoriajoneuvon nostaminen c) Malli d) Tyyppi 3. Valmistaja (1) 4. Valmistaja (2) 5. Teknisen tiedoston kokoamiseen valtuutettu oikeushenkilö 6. Yhdemmukaistettujen standardien viitetiedot 7. Muut standardit tal tiedot 8. Paikka 9. Päiväys	Ceština (Czech) ES - Prohlášeni o shodě 1. Niže podepsaný Rycichi Hiraki jako zástupce výrobce, timto prohlašuje, že uvedené strojni zařízeni splňuje přislušné požadavky Směrnice evropské komise 2006/42/EC pro strojni zařízeni 2) Obený název : núžkový zvedák b) Funkce : zvedání motorových vozidel c) Modal d) Typ 3. Vyrobce (1) 4. Výrobce (2) 5. Právnická osoba oprávněná k předložení technické dokumetace 8. Odkazy na harmonizované normy 7. Jiné normy nebo specifikase 8. Místo 9. Datum
Português (Portuguese) Declaração de Conformidade CE 1. O abaixo-assinado, Ryolchi Hiraki, representando os fabricantes através desta, declara que a maquinaria descrita abaixo cumpre todas as disposições referentes à: - Directiva 2006/42/CE, sobre máquinas, 2. Descrição da maquinaria a) Denominação genérica : Macaco de tesoura b) Função : Elevação de veiculo motor o; Modelo d) Tipo 3. Fabricante (1) 4. Fabricante (2) 5. Pessoa jurídica autorizada a compilar o processo técnico 6. Referências às normas harmonizadas 7. Outras normas ou específicações 8. Elaborado em 9. Data	Svenska (Swedish) EG-försäkran om överensstämmelse 1. Undertecknad representant för tillverkaren, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, försäkrar härmed att den nedan beskrivna maskinutrustningen uppfyller alla tillämpliga bestämmelser i: -EU:s maskindirektiv 2006/42/EG 2. Beskrivning av maskinutrustningen a) Generisk benämnig: 3. Ganerisk benämnig: 3. Ganerisk benämnig: 3. Tillverkare (1) 4. Tillverkare (2) 5. Juridisk person behörig att sammanställa den tekniska dokumentationen 6. Hänvisningar till harmoniserade normer 7. Övriga normer eller specifikationer 8. Utfärdad i 9. Datum	Polski (Polish) Deklaracja zgodności WE 1. Niżej podpisany, Pan Ryoichi Hiraki, reprezentujący producentów, niniejszym oświadcza, że opisane poniżej urządzenie jest zgodne z wszystkimi stosownymi postanowieniami: •Dyrektywy maszynowej Współnoty Europejskiej 2006/42/WE 2. Opis urządzenia a) Nazwa ogólna : podnośnik nożycowy b) Przeznaczenie : podnośnik nożycowy b) Przeznaczenie : podnośnik nożycowy silnikowych c) Model d) Typ 3. Producent (2) 5. Osoba prawna upowaźniona do kompilacji dokumentacji technicznej 6. Odniesienie do zharmonizowanych norm 7. Inne normy lub specyfikacje 8. Sporządzono w 9. Data	Slovenčina (Slovak) ES vyhlásenie o zhode 1. Podpisaný Ryvichi Hiraki, zástupca výrobcov, týmto vyhlasuje, že nižšie opisané strojové zariadenie splňa všetky prislušné ustanovenia tejto smernice: «Smernica 2006/42/ES o strojových zariadeniach 2. Opis strojového zariadenia 3) Generické určenie : pantografický zdvihák b) Funkcia : zdvihanie motorových vozidiel c) Model d) Typ 3. Výrobca (1) 4. Výrobca (2) 5. Autorizovaný zástupca schopný predložiť technickú dokumentáciu 6. Odkazy na harmonizované normy 7. Iné normy alebo požiadavky 8. Miesto 9. Datum

Magyar (Hungarian) EK magfalelőségi nyilatkozat 1. Alulírott, Mr. Ryoichi Hiraki, a gyártók képviseletében ezennel kijelenti, hogy az alább mögnevezeti gáp teljesíti • a gépekre vonatkos2 övől 42/EK irányelv összes vonatkos2 övől 42/EK irányelv összes vonatkos2 övől 42/EK irányelv összes vonatkos2 övől 42/EK irányelv összes vonatkos2 ölől 42/EK irányelv G. Harmonizált szabványkivatkosások 7. Egyéb szabványok vagy műszaki jellemzők 8. Kiállítás helye 9. Kiállitás dátuma	Eesti (Estonian) EÜ vastavusdeklaratsioon 1. Tootjate esindaja hr. Ryoichi Hiraki kinnitab käesolevaga, et alipool kirjeldatud seadmed vastavad järgmise õigusakti kõigile asjakohastele sätetele: -EÜ masinadirektiiv 2006/42/EÜ 2. Seadmet kirjeldus a) Üldnimetus : käärtungraud b) Funktsioon : mootorsöiduki töstmine c) Mudel d) Tüüp 3. Tootja (1) 4. Tootja (2) 5. Juriidiline isik, kes on volitatud koostama tehnilist toimikut 8. Vitted harmoneeritud standarditele 7. Muud standardid ja spetsifikatsioonid 8. Koht 9. Kuupäev	 Български (Bulgarian) ЕС декларация за съответствие 1. Долуподписаният г-н Риоки Хираки, представляващ производителите, декларирам с настоящата, че машината описана по-долу напълно изпълнява всички съответни разпоредби на: •Европейската директивата 2006/42/ЕС за машиностроенето 2. Описание на машината а) Генерично наименование : Пантографен крик b) Функция : повдигане на моторни превозни средства с) Модел d) Тип 3. Производител (1) 4. Производител (2) 5. Юридическо лице упълномощено да състави техническия файл 6. Препратки към харионизирани стандарти 7. Други стандарти или спецификации 8. Изготвено в 9. Дата 	Román (Romanian) Declaraţie de conformitate CE 1. Subsemnatul Ryoichi Hiraki, reprezentant al producătorilor, declar prin prezenta că utilajul descris mai jos respectă toate prevederile relevante ale: •Directivei CE 2006/42/CE referitoare la maşini 2. Descrierea utilajului a) Denumire generică : Cric tip pantograf b) Funcție: ridicarea vehiculelor cu motor c) Model d) Tip 3. Producător (1) 4. Producător (2) 5. Persoana juridică autorizată să redacteze fișierul tehnic 6. Trimiteri la standardele armonizate 7. Alte standarde sau specificații 8. Întocmită în 9. Data
Latviešu (Latvian) EK paziņojums par atbilstību 1. Zemāk parakstījes Ryoichi Hiraki, kas pārstāv račotājus, ar šo paziņo, ka zemāk aprakstītā mašina atbilst piemērojamām šis direktīvas prasībām. -EK Mašīnu direktīva 2006/42/EK 2. Mašinu direktīva 2006/42/EK 2. Mašinus apraksta a) Vispārīgs apzīmējums : Vītnes domkrats b) Funkcija : Spēkratu celšana c) Modelis d) Tips 3. Ražotājs (1) 4. Ražotājs (2) 5. Jundiskā persona, kas pilnvarota apkopot tehnisko failu 6. Ataaucos uz harmonizētajiem standartiem 7. Citi standarti vai specifikācijas 8. Vieta 9. Laiks	Slovensčina (Slovenian) Izjava o skladnosti ES 1. Podpisani g. Ryoichi Hiraki, ki zastopa proizvajalos, stem izjavlja, da naprava, ki je opisana spodaj, izpolnjuje vse relevantne določbe: •Direktive o napravah 2006/42/ES 2. Opis naprave a) Genetično ime : Pantografski dvigalnik b) Funkcija : dvigovanje motornega vozila c) Model d) Tip 3. Proizvajalec (1) 4. Proizvajalec (2) 5. Pravna oseba, ki je upravičena do sestave tehničnega dokumenta 6. Reference glede harmoniziranih standardov 7. Drugi standardi ali specifikacije 8. Ustvarjeno v/ma 9. Datum	Türk (Turkish) AT Uygunluk Beyani 1. Aşağıda imzasi bulunan Sn. Ryoichi Hiraki, imalâçılan temsilen, tarif edilen makinelerin aşağıda adı geçen yönetmeliğin liğli hükünkölmelrine uygun olduğunu beyan eder. •AT makine direktifi 2006/42/EC 2. Makinelerin tanımı a) Jenerik adı : Pantograf kriko b) İşlevi: motorlu taşıtıları kaldırma c) Model d) Tür 3. İmalâçı (1) 4. İmalâçı (2) 5. Teknik dosyayı düzenlemeye yetkili tüzel kişi 6. Uyumlaştırılmış standartlara atıflar 7. Diğer standartlar ya da şartnameler 8. Düzenlendiği yer 9. Tarih	İslenska (Icelandic) EB-samrasmisyfirlýsing 1. Undirritaður, herra Ryoichi Hiraki, fulltrúi framleiðanda, lýsir yfir að vélbúnaðinum, sem lýst er hér að neðan, uppfyllir öll viðeigandi ákvæði: -EB-tilskipunarinnar 2006/42/EC um vélbúnað 2. Lýsing á vélbúnaðinum a) Almennt heiti: Tviarma tjakkur b) Hutverk: að lyfta vélkuňnum ökutækjum c) Gerð d) Tegund 3. Framleiðandi (1) 4. Framleiðandi (2) 5. Lögaðili sem hefur heimild að taka saman tækniskjal 6. Tilvísanir í samhæfða staðla 7. Aðrir staðtar eða tæknilýsingar 8. Staður 9. Dagsetning

Information

Español (Spanish) Dectaración de Conformidad CE 1. El abajo firmante, Sr. Ryoichi Hiraki, en representación de los fabricantes, por la presente deciara que la maquinaria descrita a continuación cumple con las disposiciones aplicables de: 1.a directiva 2005/42/CE relativa a maquinarias 2. Descripción de la maquinaria a) Denominación genérica : Gato pantográfico b) Función : Elevación de vehículo automotor c) Modelo d) Tipo 3. Fabricante (1) 4. Fabricante (2) 5. Persona jurídica autorizada para recopilar el archivo técnico 6. Referencias de normas armonizadas 7. Otras normas o especificaciones 8. Elaborada en 9. Fecha	Norsk (Norwegian) EF-samsvarserklæring 1. Underlegnede, Ryoichi Hiraki, som representerer produsentene, erklærer herved at mæskinen beskrevet nedenfor oppfyller alle relevante bestemmelser i: -EU-maskindirektiv 2006/42/EU 2. Beskrivelse av maskineriet a) Generisk betegnelse : Pantografjekk (blijekk) b) Funkisjon: løfting av motorkjøretøyer c) Modell d) Type 3. Produsent (1) 4. Produsent (2) 5. Juridisk person med fullmakt til å utarbeide den tekniske dokumentasjonen 6. Henvisninger til harmoniserte standarder 7. Andre standarder eller spesifikasjoner 8. Utarbeidet 9. Dato
Lietuvių kalba (Lithuanian) EB atlikties deklaracija 1. Tohau pasinšės gamintojų atstovas Ryoichi Hiraki deklaruoje, kad toliau aprašytojį įranga atlinka visas atlinkamas nuostatas, išdeštytas: -EB Direktyvoje 2008/42/EB dėl mašinų 2. įrangos aprašymas a) Bendras pavadinimas : pantografo kėliklis b) Funkcija: o) Forukcija: o) Modelis di) Tipas 3. Gamintojas (1) 4. Gamintojas (2) 5. Juridinis asmuo, įgaliotas sudaryti techninę bylą 6. Nuoroda į kylaverčius standartus 7. Kiti standartai arba specifikacijos 8. Atlikta 9. Data	Hrvatski (Croatian) Izjava o sukladnosti EK 1. Ja, doje potpisani Rybichi Hiraki, predstavnik proizvođaća, ovime izjavljujem da su strojevi opisani u nastavku sukladni s bitnim odredbama: -Direktive 2006/42/EZ Europskog parlamenta i vijeća o strojevima 2. Opis stroja a) Generički naziv : pantografska dizalica b) Funkcija : podizanje motornog vozila c) Model d) Tip 3. Proizvođač (1) 4. Proizvođač (2) 5. Pravna osoba ovlaštena za sastavljanje tehničke dokumentacije 6. Upućivanje na usklađene norme 7. Ostale norme li specifikacije 8. Mjesto 9. Datum

Numbers

12-Volt Battery 670	
Charging System Indicator 104, 709	
Maintenance (Checking the 12-Volt	
Battery) 670	
Maintenance (Replacing) 673	
4WD	

Α

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System)	601
Accessories and Modifications	685
Accessory Power Sockets	268
Acoustic Vehicle Alerting System	515
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low	
Speed Follow (LSF)	553
Adding	
Coolant	646
Engine Oil	645
Washer	653
Additives, Engine Oil	642
Adjustable Speed Limiter	516
Adjusting	
Armrest	258
Front Seats	248
Head Restraints	254
Mirrors	244
Steering Wheel	243
Temperature	150

Adjusting the Sound	299, 341
Agile Handling Assist	529
Aha [™]	361
Air Conditioning System (Climate	Control
System)	278
Changing the Mode	280
Defrosting the Windscreen and	
Windows	281
Dust and Pollen Filter	678
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode	280
Sensor	284
Synchronization Mode	
Using Automatic Climate Control.	278
Air Pressure	
Airbags	61
After a Collision	64
Airbag Care	74
Event Data Recorder	1
Front Airbags (SRS)	63
Indicator	72, 107
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator	73, 107
Sensors	61
Side Airbag	68
Side Curtain Airbag	70
All-Wheel Drive (AWD) System	530
AM/FM Radio	301, 348
Android Auto	381
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	601
Indicator	106

Apple CarPlay Armrest Audio Remote Controls		258
Audio System		
Adjusting the Sound		
Audio/Information Screen		
Changing the Home Screen Icon La		
Changing the Screen Interface	-	
Closing Apps		340
Customizing the Meter		
Display Setup		
Error Messages		385
General Information		387
HDMI [™] Port		288
Home Screen		330
iPod	. 310,	354
Menu Customize		339
MP3/WMA/AAC	. 313,	362
Reactivating		289
Recommended Devices		387
Remote Controls		290
Security Code		289
Selecting an Audio Source		343
Status Area		337
Theft Protection		289
USB Flash Drives	3, 362,	387
USB Port(s)		287
Wallpaper Setup	. 297,	328
Audio System Basic Operation	. 293,	319

Audio/Information Screen 295, 320 Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support	
System) 229	
Indicator 110	
Automatic Brake Hold 599	
Indicator 101, 599	
Automatic Folding Door Mirror	
Function	
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 234	
Automatic Lighting 225	
Average Fuel Economy 149	
Average Fuel Economy Records 151	
Average Speed 149	
AWD (All-Wheel Drive)	

В

Battery 12
12-Volt Battery Charging System
Indicator 104, 709
High Voltage 12, 537
Jump Starting 704
Belts (Seat) 49
Beverage Holders 266
Blind spot information System 534
Indicator 122
Bluetooth [®] Audio 316, 365
Booster Seats (For Children)
Brake System 595
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 601
Automatic Brake Hold 599

Brake Assist System	
Fluid	652
Foot Brake	
Indicator 100, 102, 711,	712
Parking Brake	595
Brightness Control (Head-up Display)	238
Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)	237
Bulb Replacement	655
Active Cornering Lights	656
Back-Up Lights	657
Brake Lights	656
Daytime Running Lights	656
Front Fog Lights	655
Front Turn Signal Lights	656
Glove Box Light	659
Headlights	655
High-Mount Brake Light	658
Luggage Area Lights	659
Position Lights	656
Rear Fog Light	658
Rear Licence Plate Light	658
Rear Turn Signal Lights	656
Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator	
Lights	656
Taillights 656,	657
Vanity Mirror Lights	659
Bulb Specifications	726

С

Car Wash Mode 508	
Carbon Monoxide Gas	
Carrying Luggage 487, 489	
Certification Label 729	
Changing Bulbs	
Child Restraint System75	
Booster Seats	
Child Restraint System for Infants 78	
Child Restraint System for Small Children 80	
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/	
Shoulder Seat Belt 90	
Larger Children 93	
Rear-facing Child Restraint System	
Selecting a Child Restraint System	
Using Tether	
Child Safety75	
Childproof Door Locks 195	
Childproof Door Locks 195	
Cleaning the Exterior	
Cleaning the Interior	
Climate Control System 278	
Changing the Mode 278	
Defrosting the Windscreen and	
Windows 281	
Dust and Pollen Filter 678	
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode 280	
Sensors 284	
Synchronization Mode 283	
Using Automatic Climate Control	

Index

Clock
CMBS (Collision Mitigation Braking
System) 542
Coat Hook 270
Collision Mitigation Braking System
(CMBS) 542
Continuously Variable Transmission 503
Fluid 651
Controls 179
Coolant (Engine)
Overheating 706
Cooling System
Adding to the Reserve Tank
Creeping
Cross Traffic Monitor 611
Customized Features 161, 392, 400

D

DAB
Daytime Running Lights
Dead Battery
Deceleration Paddle Selector 511
Indicator 105
Defaulting All the Settings 427
Deflation Warning System 531
Indicator 109, 714
Initialisation 531
Defrosting the Windscreen and
Windows
Devices that Emit Radio Waves730

Dimming		
Headlights		224
Rearview Mirror		244
Dipstick (Engine Oil)		644
Directional Signals (Turn Signals)		
Display Setup		
Display/Information Button	147,	320
Door Mirrors		
Doors		183
Door Open Message	48,	123
Keys		
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from		
the Inside		193
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from		
the Outside		186
Lockout Prevention System		192
Driver Information Interface		146
Driver's Seat Lumbar Support		250
Driving		
Braking		595
Shifting Gear		
Transmission		503
Driving Guidelines for Your Utility		
Vehicle		501
Driving Position Memory System		241
Dust and Pollen Filter		

Ε

EC Declaration of Conformity Content	
Outline	4
eCall Indicator 48	0
Eco Assist System 1	8
Eco Drive Display 19, 15	2
ECON Mode 51	4
Elapsed Time 14	.9
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	
Indicator 108, 71	3
Emergency72	2
Emergency Call (eCall) 48	0
Automatic Emergency Call 48	0
Manual Emergency Call 48	2
Emergency Stop Signal 60	3
Engine	
Jump Starting 70	4
Number	9
Oil 64	2
Switch Buzzer 22	2
Engine Coolant	
Overheating	6
Engine Oil	2
Adding 64	5
Checking 64	4
Low Oil Level Symbol 71	5
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 104, 70	9
Recommended Engine Oil 64	2
e-pretensioners	4
EPS (Electric Power Steering) System 10	8
EV Button 1	

Index

EV Indicator	103
EV Mode Indicator	103
Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide)	. 96
Exterior Care (Cleaning)	682
Exterior Mirrors	245

F

Features
Filter
Dust and Pollen 678
Flat Tyre 689
Fluids
Brake 652
Continuously Variable Transmission 651
Cooling System 646
Windscreen Washer 653
FM/AM Radio 301, 348
Folding Down the Rear Seats 253
Foot Brake 598
Four-Wheel Drive System 530
Front Airbags (SRS) 63
Front Fog Light Indicator 111
Front Seat Heaters 274
Front Seats
Adjusting 248
Front Sensor Camera 592
Fuel 618
Economy and CO ₂ Emissions
Gauge 144
Instant Fuel Economy 150

Low Fuel Indicator 106
Range 149
Recommendation 618
Refueling 618
Fuel Economy and CO ₂ Emissions
Fuel Fill Cap 36, 619
Fuel Fill Door
Fuses
Inspecting and Changing 721
Locations 716, 718, 719

G

Gauges	144
Glass (care) 681,	683
Glove Box	262

Η

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT)
Automatic Import of Cellular Phonebook and
Call History 461
Displaying Messages 476
HFT Buttons 428, 449
HFT Menus 430, 452
HFT Status Display 429, 451
Limitations for Manual Operation 429, 451
Making a Call 444, 469
Options During a Call 448, 473
Phone Setup 434, 456
Phonebook Phonetic Modification

Receiving a Call 447,	472
Receiving a Text Message/E-mail	474
Ring Tone 439,	460
Selecting a Mail Account	475
Speed Dial 442,	462
To Set Up Text Message/E-mail Options	459
Hazard Warning Button	4, 5
HDMI [™] Port	288
Head Restraints	254
Headlight Washers	236
Headlights	224
Aiming	655
Auto High-Beam (High Beam Support	
System)	229
Automatic Operation	225
Dimming	224
Operating	
Head-up Display	173
Brightness Control	238
Heated Door Mirror Button	239
Heated Steering Wheel	273
Heated Windscreen Button	240
Heaters (Front Seat)	274
Heaters (Rear Seat)	275
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone) 428,	449
High Beam Indicator	111
High Voltage Battery	537
Hill Start Assist System	500
Honda Sensing 37,	
Honda TRK	689

Hybrid Vehicle

SPORT HYBRID i-MMD (intelligent Multi Mod	e
Drive) 1	1

I . .

Identification Numbers	729
Engine, Motor and Transmission	729
Vehicle Identification	729
Illumination Control	237
Knob	237
Immobilizer System	208
Indicator	112
Indicators	100
12-Volt Battery Charging System	104
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) and Intellig	gent
Speed Limiter Set Speed	113
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low S	peed
Follow (LSF) 117,	553
Adjustable Speed Limiter	113
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	106
Auto High-Beam	110
Automatic Brake Hold 101,	599
Automatic Brake Hold System	101
Blind spot information System	122
Collision Mitigation Braking System	
(CMBS)	119
Deceleration Paddle Selector	105
ECON Mode	113

Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	108
EV	103
EV Mode	103
Front Fog Light	111
High Beam	111
Immobilizer System	112
Intelligent Speed Limiter	113
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 118,	572
Lights On	111
Low Fuel	106
Low Oil Pressure 104,	709
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning	
System 109,	714
Malfunction Indicator Lamp 104,	710
Parking Brake and Brake System	
(Amber) 102,	712
Parking Brake and Brake System	
(Red) 100, 711,	712
Passenger Front Airbag On/Off	107
Power System	103
Ready	103
Rear Fog Light	111
Road Departure Mitigation	114
Seat Belt Reminder	106
Security System Alarm	112
Shift Position	105
SPORT Mode 105,	510
Supplemental Restraint System	107
System Message	110

105,	715
	111
108,	528
	108
	. 99
	237
	520
	113
	259
	244
310,	354

J

Jack (Wheel Nut Wrench)	699, 7	200
Jump Starting	7	'04

Κ

Key Number Tag	184
Keyless Lockout Prevention	192
Keys	183
Lockout Prevention	192
Number Tag	184
Rear Door Won't Open	195
Remote Transmitter	189
Types and Functions	183
Kickdown	503

L

Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	
Lights	655
Active Cornering Lights	227
Automatic	225
Bulb Replacement	655
Daytime Running Lights	232
Front Fog Lights	228
High Beam Indicator	111
Interior	259
Light Switches	224
Lights On Indicator	111
Luggage Area Lights	261
Rear Fog Light	228
Turn Signals	223
Load Limits	489
Locking/Unlocking	183
Childproof Door Locks	195
From Inside	193
From Outside	186
Keys	183
Using a Key	191
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the	
Outside	186
Lockout Prevention System	192
Low Battery Charge	709
	109
Low Fuel Indicator	106
Low Fuel Indicator Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength Low Oil Pressure Indicator	106 185

g System
109, 714
86
727
489
276
271
250

Μ

N.4. 1. 1	C 24
Maintenance	
12-Volt Battery	670
Brake Fluid	652
Cleaning	680
Climate Control	677
Cooling System	646
Oil	644
Precautions	622
Radiator	647
Remote Transmitter	676
Replacing Light Bulbs	655
Safety	623
Service Reminder System	626
Transmission Fluid	651
Tyres	665
Under the Bonnet	639
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	104, 710
Map Lights	260
Maximum Permissible Weight	489

Meters, Gauges 144
Mirrors
Adjusting 244
Door 245
Interior Rearview 244
Modifications (and Accessories) 685
Motor
Number 729
MP3
MP4
Multi-View Rear Camera 616

Ν

Numbers (Identification) 72	9
-----------------------------	---

0

Odometer	148
Off-road Guidelines	496
Oil (Engine)	642
Adding	645
Checking	644
Low Oil Level Symbol	715
Low Oil Pressure Indicator 104,	709
Recommended Engine Oil	642
Viscosity	642
On Board Apps	369
Open Source Licences	391

Opening/Closing

Bonnet	640
Power Windows	214
Tailgate	196
Outside Temperature Display	150
Overheating	706

Ρ

Panoramic Roof 216	
Parking Brake 595	5
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator	
(Amber) 102, 712	2
Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator	
(Red) 100, 711, 712	2
Parking Sensor System	5
Passenger Airbag Off Indicator	7
Passing Indicators 224	1
Petrol	3
Economy and CO ₂ Emissions)
Gauge 144	1
Information	3
Instant Fuel Economy 150)
Low Fuel Indicator 106	5
Refueling 618	3
Playing Bluetooth® Audio 316, 365	5
POWER Button)
Power System	
Won't Start 701	l

Power System Indicator	103
Power Tailgate	199
Power Windows	214
POWER/CHARGE Gauge 145,	177
Precautions While Driving	501
Rain	502
Pregnant Women	. 58
Puncture (Tyre)	689

R

Radiator
Radio (FM/AM)
Radio Data System (RDS) 302, 350
RDS (Radio Data System) 302, 350
Ready Indicator 103
Real Time AWD with Intelligent Control
System 530
Rear Fog Light Indicator 111
Rear Seat Heaters 275
Rear Seats 252
Rear Seats (Folding Down) 253
Rearview Mirror 244
Refueling 618
Fuel Gauge 144
Low Fuel Indicator 106
Petrol 618, 726
Regulations 730
Remote Transmitter 189

Replacement

12-Volt Battery	673
Bulbs	655
Fuses 716, 718,	719
Rear Wiper Blade Rubber	663
Wiper Blade Rubber	660
Resetting a Trip Meter	149
Reverse Tilt Door Mirror	246
Road Departure Mitigation	578
On and Off	581

S

Safe Driving 43
Safety Check 48
Safety Labels
Safety Message 0
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor 57
Seat Belts 49
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor 56
Checking 59
Detachable Anchor 57
e-pretensioners 54
Fastening 55
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/
Shoulder Seat Belt
Pregnant Women 58
Reminder 51
Warning Indicator 51, 106

Seat Heaters	248 248 250 274 248
Seat Heaters	
Security System	,
Immobilizer System Indicator	112
Security System Alarm Indicator	112
Super Locking	213
Tilt Sensor	212
Ultrasonic Sensors	211
Selecting a Child Restraint System	
Selector Knob (Audio)	293
Service Reminder System	626
Setting the Clock	180
Shift Button	
Shift Position Indicator	
Shifting (Transmission)	
Shoulder Anchor	
Side Airbags	
Side Curtain Airbag	
Siri Eyes Free	
Smartphone Connection	
Song By Voice [™] (SBV)	
SOS Button	
SOS Cancel Button	
Spark Plugs	
Specifications	726

Specified Fuel618	
Speed Limiter, Adjustable 516	
Speed Limiter, Intelligent 520	
Speedometer 144	
SPORT Mode 510	
SPORT Mode Indicator 105, 510	
SRS Airbags (Airbags) 63	
Starting the Engine	
Jump Starting 704	
Steering Wheel 243	
Adjusting 243	
Stopping 604	
Sunglasses Holder 272	
Super Locking 213	
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) 63	
Switches (Around the Steering	
Wheel) 4, 5, 6, 220	
System Message Indicator 110	

Т

Tailgate	196
Unable to Open	723
Temperature	
Outside Temperature Display	150
Temperature Sensor	150
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK)	689
Tie-down Anchors	271
Tilt Sensor	212
Time (Setting)	180
Tools	688

Towing a Trailer		490
Equipment and Accessories		492
Load Limits		490
Towing Your Vehicle		
Emergency		722
Traffic Sign Recognition System		584
Small Icons On and Off		591
Transmission	503,	504
Creeping		503
Fluid		651
Kickdown		503
Number		729
Operating the Shift Button		504
Operation		. 33
Shift Position Indicator		105
Trip Knob		148
Trip Meter		149
TRK (Temporary Repair Kit)		689
Troubleshooting		687
Blown Fuse 716,	718,	719
Brake Pedal Vibrates		. 40
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door.		. 41
Emergency Towing		722
Jump Starting		704
Noise When Braking		. 42
Overheating		706
Power System Won't Start		701
Puncture/Flat Tyre		689
Rear Door Won't Open	40,	195
Warning Indicators	100,	709

Index

Turn Signals	. 223
Indicators (Instrument Panel)	. 111
Turning on the Power	. 498
Does Not Activate	. 701
Tyres	. 665
Air Pressure	. 727
Checking and Maintaining	. 665
Inspection	. 665
Puncture (Flat Tyre)	. 689
Rotation	. 668
Temporary Repair Kit (TRK)	. 689
Tyre Chains	. 669
Wear Indicators	. 666
Winter	. 669

U

Ultrasonic Sensors 211
Unlocking the Doors 186
Unlocking the Front Doors from
the Inside 24
USB Flash Drives
USB Port(s)

Index

V

Vanity Mirrors	9
Vehicle Identification Numbers	729
Vehicle Speed	177

Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)	527
OFF Button	528
OFF Indicator	108
System Indicator	108
Viscosity (Oil)	642, 727
Voice Control Operation	344
Audio Commands	346
Climate Control Commands	347
General Commands	347
Music Search Commands	347
On Screen Commands	347
Phone Commands	346
Useful Commands	346
Voice Portal Screen	345
Voice Recognition	344
VSA (Vehicle Stability Assist)	527

W

Wallpaper 297, 328
Warning and Information Message 123
Warning Indicator On/Blinking 709
Warning Labels
Watts 726
WAV
Wear Indicators (Tyre)
Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle) 699, 700
Wi-Fi Connection 374

Window Washers 23	33
Adding/Refilling Fluid 65	53
Switch 23	33
Windows (Opening and Closing) 21	14
Windscreen 23	33
Cleaning 681, 68	33
Defrosting/Defogging 239, 28	31
Washer Fluid 65	53
Wiper Blades 66	50
Wipers and Washers 23	33
Winter Tyres	59
Tyre Chains 66	59
Wipers and Washers 23	33
Automatic Intermittent Wipers 23	34
Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades 66	50
Front 23	33
Headlight Washers 23	36
Rear 23	35
WMA 313, 36	52
Worn Tyres	55